

BOOKS & T. & S. T. & S.

A New Roman History, by Question and Answer.

of the Roman Empire, from its first foundation to its fall. And in the most interesting manner, the History of the Roman Empire is presented with such Clarity and Simplicity, as to be understood by all. With a complete Index, by the Author of the History of England, &c. &c. &c.

The History of the World, from the beginning of the world to the present time, is presented in a new and interesting manner, by the Author of the History of England, &c. &c. &c.

A short History of the World, from the beginning of the world to the present time, is presented in a new and interesting manner, by the Author of the History of England, &c. &c. &c.

OF
E N G L A N D,

BY
The Author of the History of England, &c. &c. &c.

QUESTION and ANSWER.

The Fourth Edition.

The Fourth Edition.

By the Author of *The Roman History*

by Question and Answer.

The Fourth Edition.

The Fourth Edition.

BOOKS Sold by T. ASTLEY.

A New Roman History, by Question and Answer. In a Method much more comprehensive than any of the Kind extant. Extracted from Ancient Authors, and the most Celebrated among the Modern. And interspers'd with such Customs as serve to illustrate the History. With a complete Index. By the Author of the History of England by Question and Answer. 12mo. Price 3 s.

The Temple of the Muses; or, the principal Histories of Fabulous Antiquity. With Explications and Remarks, which discover the true Meaning of the several Fables, and their Foundation in History. Written principally for the Instruction of Youth, 12mo. Price 3 s.

A short Way to know the World; or, the Rudiments of Geography: Being a new, familiar Method of teaching Youth the Knowledge of the Globes, and the four Quarters of the World. The 2d Edition, 12mo. Price 2 s. 6 d.

The Life and entertaining Adventures of Mr. Cleveland, Natural Son of Oliver Cromwel. Written by himself. Giving a particular Account of his Unhappiness in Love, Marriage, Friendship, &c. and his great Sufferings in Europe and America. Intermix'd with Reflections, describing the Heart of Man in all its variety of Passions and Disguises; also some curious Particulars of Oliver's History and Amours, and several remarkable Particulars in the Reign of K. Charles II. never before made publick. In 5 Vols. 12mo. Price 12 s. 6 d.

Ovid's Metamorphosis. In fifteen Books. Made English by Mr. Pope, Mr. Gay, Mr. Philips and others. Adorned with Cuts. The third Edition. Publish'd by Dr. Sewell. In two Vols. 12mo. Price 5 s.

The Works of Virgil. Translated into English Blank Verse. With large explanatory Notes, and critical Observations. By Joseph Trapp, D. D. In three Volumes 12mo. Price 9 s.

Poems on several Occasions. By Stephen Duck. Sometime a poor Thrasher in a Barn, in the County of Wilts, at the Wages of 4 s. 6 d. a Week. The ninth Edition. To which are added, several Poems by the same Author, not in any of the former Editions. Also a Copy of Verses from a Miller in Ireland to Stephen Duck, 8vo. Price 6 d.

A NEW
HISTORY
OF
ENGLAND,
BY _____ K
QUESTION and ANSWER.

Extracted from the
Most Celebrated *English* Historians.

Particularly
M. RAPIN *de* THOYRAS.

The FOURTH EDITION, Corrected, and
very much Improv'd by the AUTHOR.



LONDON,
Printed for THO. ASTLEY, at the *Rose* in
St. Paul's Church-yard,
MDCCXXXIX.

A NEW
HISTORY
OF
NEW YORK



Miss J. Robinson, 100 West 11th St.

12-10-1914

very much helped by the fact that



Printed for T. & A. Astley, at the Office in
St. Paul's Church-yard.
MDCCLXXIX.



TO

ROBERT ROBINSON, Esq;

Recorder of *Scarborough*.

SIR,

TH E character I heard
of your knowledge in
those parts of literature
which best adorn the
mind, and of your complacency
to all who have the happiness of
approaching you, were the mo-
tives of my desiring your acquain-
tance.

Being indulg'd it, I reap'd no
little advantage and satisfaction

A 3

from

DEDICATION.

from your conversation, but the amiableness of your temper gave me inexpressible pleasure.

As you are endu'd with all the qualities which can endear a man to society, 'tis no wonder you should be the delight of your acquaintance. A Gentleman, whose cast of mind is such, as shows the greatest disinterestedness, and the utmost contempt for riches, cannot but be eminently conspicuous in an age, when avarice seems the only prevailing passion; and when the several Individuals, instead of affording their reciprocal assistance, and of heightning those pleasures which would otherwise arise from their intercourse, are every moment in search of low, groveling artifices, to gratify themselves, and to perplex and injure the

DEDICATION.

the community of which they are members.

Were your fortune as large and extensive as the generosity of your disposition, Multitudes, who are now groaning under various calamities, would enjoy all the blessings that human aid can bestow.

But I am venturing upon a task for which I find myself unequal, and shall therefore hasten to apologize for my present attempt; and especially for my presuming to prefix (unknown to you) your name to the following rude sheets. The only hope I have is from your Candor: and as the familiarity you are pleas'd to allow me, and my station of life, place me above the venal views of most dedicators; I flatter myself

DEDICATION.

self that these considerations will, in some measure, plead my excuse ; particularly when I assure you that no one can have a higher esteem for you, or be with greater sincerity,

S I R,

Your most humble Servant.

PRE-

P R E F A C E.



THE uncommon encouragement this little work has met with, made me ambitious of laying a more just claim to the publick favour; and for this reason I have, in this fourth edition, compar'd it very exactly with our most celebrated English historians, especially with Mr. Rapin de Thoyras; so that if it merited some little countenance in its former undress, I may venture to assert that it now deserves more, on account of the great pains I have taken to new mould the incidents; as well as to correct the chronology in almost every part.

The chief design of this work, is to introduce our youth to the knowledge of the history of their own country. However, tho' it be calculated more immediately for them, it yet may be of service to such grown persons, who, being strangers to the English History, are desirous of acquainting themselves with it; or to others, who having studied it at large in Rapin, or some other voluminous writer, are desirous of refreshing their memories in that particular.

'Tis surprizing no one had attempted an abridgment of the English History, before I engaged in that I now present the reader with; especially as epitomes have been long since publish'd of other histories in our language. The Greek and Roman histories indeed contain a series of the noblest events that ever happen'd; but

P R E F A C E.

but still they are not so much our concern, as the transactions that relate to our own country. The birth or death of a sovereign Prince, will create joy, or throw a damp on the minds of the greatest part of his subjects; but these passions are much stronger, when they are raised from circumstances that happen among their nearest relations. The comparison will hold between the Roman and English histories; the former indeed raises our admiration more, when we consider the origin of that state, its progress and decay; but the latter, tho' it exhibits less noble incidents, does nevertheless affect us in a much stronger manner.

Next to the histories of the Greeks and Romans, there is, I believe, none which affords a greater variety of memorable events than that of England; especially when we consider the surprizing revolutions therein, which are hardly to be parallel'd in any other annals.

I have endeavour'd to state every thing with the utmost impartiality, without being attach'd to any party; and as I have advanc'd nothing but from good authorities, if the reader should meet with any passage that clashes with his particular sentiments, I must intreat him not to be too severe in his censure, since my sole aim was his improvement in history and language.

I owe some acknowledgments to a little French work, entitled, *Methode facile pour apprendre l'histoire d'Angleterre*, and to the late Mr. A. Boyer, for the history of *Queen Anne*.

SCHOOL-

SCHOOL-BOOKS.

Lately publish'd, Price 5 s. (beautifully printed on a fine Genoa Paper) For the Use of SCHOOLS.

I. **P**. TERENTII Comœdiæ Sex; or, the Six Comœdies of TERENCE, with the following Improvements; in a Method, which, it is presumed, will not only afford the Youth all necessary Assistance at School, but enable Gentlemen to retrieve with Ease and Pleasure their Classica Learning, which by several Years Neglect they may have in a great Measure lost. *viz.*

1. The Words of the Author are placed in their Natural and Grammatical Order, in the lower Part of the Page.
2. Such Words supplied as by an Ellipsis are omitted, and yet are necessary to make the Sense compleat.
3. The most remarkable Phrases are English'd, and placed in Order, as they occur in the Author.
4. An Alphabetical Vocabulary of the Words in the Author, shewing their Parts of Speech and Signification.
5. The Themes of the Verbs, with their Conjugation and Government.

By JOHN STIRLING, M. A. Chaplain to his Grace the Duke of GORDON.

- II. Pub. Ovidii Nasonis Tristia, 8vo. Pr. 3 s. 6 d. bound.
- III. Auli Persii Flacci Satiræ, 8vo. Pr. 1 s. bound.
- IV. Pub. Virgilii Maronis Bucolica, 8vo. Pr. 1 s. stitch'd.
- V. Catonis Disticha Moralia & Lillii Monita Pædagogica. The 3d Edition. Pr. 1 s. bound.
- VI. L. Annæi Flori Historia Romana, 8vo. Pr. 3 s. bd.
- VII. Eutropii Historiæ Romanæ Breviarium, Pr. 2 s. 6 d.
- VIII. Phædri Augusti Cæsaris Liberti Fabulæ, 2 s. bd.
- IX. Corderii Centuria Selecta, Pr. 2 s. bound.
- X. Catechismus & Articuli Ecclesiæ Anglicanæ, Pr. 1 s.
- XI. A short View of English Grammar, 8vo. Pr. 6 d.
- XII. A short View of Latin Grammar, 8vo. Pr. 6 d.
- XIII. Breviarium Grammaticæ, Exemplaribus scribendis adaptatum; or, the Rudiments of Grammar engraved on Copper Plates for Copies. Pr. 6 d. stitch'd.

XIV. A short System of Rhetoric in a Method intirely new: Containing all the Tropes and Figures, necessary to illustrate the Classics, both poetical and historical. To render which more generally useful, the Whole is divided into two Parts: In the first of which the Rules are given
in

School-Books sold by T. ASTLEY.

in English, in the second in Latin Verse; below which are placed proper Examples in each Language; and at the Bottom of the Pages are the Terms translated in the one, and their Derivations from the Greek in the other. The second Edition, 8vo. Pr. 4d. stitch'd.

Likewise in the Press,

XV. Mr. Stirling's *Abridgment of the Pantheon, by way of Latin Exercise.*

XVI. *Pub. Virgilii Maronis Opera.*

The natural Method of Teaching, being the Accidence in Questions and Answers, explained, amended, and fitted to the Capacity and Use of the lowest Form. For the Use of St. Paul's School. The ninth Edition. By Samuel Hoadly, M. A. Price 1s. 6d.

Ovid's *Tristia*, in five Books, in English; or a prose, verbal, and grammatical Version, answering lineally to the Latin prose Version lately published, by the Author of this; by the Assistance of which the Learner may with Ease and Pleasure attain to the Construing of Ovid's Book, without (or with very little) Trouble to the Teacher. By N. Baily, 12mo. Pr. 1s.

Græcæ Grammaticæ Institutio Compendiaria. In Usus Scholarum. Autore Edv. Wettenhal, D. D. nuper Episcopo Kilmor, & Ardag. Editio Quinta. 12mo. Pretium 1s.

Thomæ Bennet, S. T. P. *Grammatica Hebræa cum uberrima Praxi in usum Tirorum, qui linguam Hebræam absque Præceptoris viva voce (idque in brevissimo Temporis compendio) ediscere cupiunt.* Accedit consilium de Studio præcipuarum linguarum Orientalium, Hebrææ scil. Caldææ, Syræ, Samaritanæ, & Arabicæ, instituendo & perficiendo. Editio tertia, 8vo. Pr. 2s. 6d.

Bishop Williams's brief Exposition of the Church Catechism, with Proofs from Scripture; divided into twelve Sections. The twenty-fourth Edition, 12mo. Price 4d. stitch'd, 6d. bound.

A NEW



A NEW METHOD

For Studying the
History of *ENGLAND*.

Q.



W HAT country is that you call *Great-Britain*?

A. The island which comprehends the kingdoms of *England* and *Scotland*.

Q. How long has it been called by that name?

A. Ever since the beginning of the reign of King *James I.* who, in order to put an end to the dispute that arose about the royal title, viz. Whether *England* or *Scotland* should be named first, assumed that of King of *Great-Britain*; and revived a name that had been laid aside ever since the beginning of the ninth century.

Q. What is the shape of *Great-Britain*?

A. Triangular; the angles whereof are the *Lizard-Point* to the west; that of *Foreland*, or *Sandwich* near *Dover*, on the east; and that of *Straithy-head* to the north.

Q. What are the seas that surround it?

A. The channel to the south, which separates it from *France*; to the east the *German Ocean*, lying between *England*, *Flanders*, *Germany*, and *Denmark*; the *North* or *Frozen-Sea* to the north; and the *Irish-Sea* to the west.

Q. Into how many parts is *Great-Britain* divided?

A. Two, viz. *England* and *Scotland*; the latter lying to the north, and the former to the south.

B

Q. What

Q. What is the true extent of *Great-Britain*?

A. The western side of it, from the *Lizard-Point* in *Cornwall* to *Cathness* in *Scotland*, reckoning the windings of the shores, is 812 miles; the eastern side 704, the south coast, which is the broadest, 320: and the circuit of the whole Island, is 1836 miles.

Q. When was the name of *Britain* chang'd into that of *England*?

A. In the year 585 or 586, a little after the founding the seven Kingdoms with the unanimous consent of the seven Kings.

Q. How is *England* bounded?

A. By the rivers of *Tweed* and *Solway*, and the mountains of *Chiviot*, which divide it from *Scotland*; the rest of it is bounded by the Ocean.

Q. Who were the ancient inhabitants thereof?

A. The *Britons*, whether *Gauls* or *Trojans*, and the *English*.

Q. What nations have had the sovereignty of it?

A. The *Britons*, the *Romans*, the *Saxons* or *English*, the *Danes*, and the *Normans*.

Q. How many Kings have reigned therein?

A. 'Tis impossible to give the exact number of those who reigned before anno 800, when *Egbert* began the monarchy, the history whereof we are now writing.

Q. Was not *England* divided into seven Kingdoms before *Egbert*?

A. Yes, and it was call'd the *Saxon Heptarchy*, which were the Kingdoms, 1. of *Kent*; 2. of *South-Sex*, or of the *South-Saxons*; 3. *West-Sex*, or of the *West-Saxons*; 4. *East-Sex*, or of the *East-Saxons*; 5. the *Northumbers*; 6. *East-Angles*; 7. of *Mercia*.

Q. Have all its Kings from *Egbert* sprung from the same family?

A. No; the family that now sits upon the throne is the seventh.

Q. Pray give me the names of the families, and the number of Kings that have sprung from them?

A. The first was that of the *Saxon* or *English* Kings, whereof there were seventeen; the second that of the *Danes*, of which there were only three Kings; the third, which

which is that of the *Normans*, gave the same number; and that of *Champagne*, which is the fourth, whereof there is only one.

Q. Who are the rest?

A. We must first observe, that that of the *Plantagenets*, or of the house of *Anjou*, which is the fifth, is divided into three branches, viz. that of the *Plantagenets*, whence eight Kings have sprung; those of *York* and of *Lancaster*, from each whereof three Monarchs have sprung.

Q. Tell me the names of the rest?

A. The *Tudors* have given three Kings and two Queens; the *Steuarts* four Kings and two Queens; and from that of *Brunswick*, which is now upon the throne, two Kings only have sprung.

Of the ROYAL FAMILY.

Q. WHAT kind of government is that of England?

A. A Monarchy, the authority whereof is nevertheless limited by the Parliament. The crown is hereditary, and the women are allowed to succeed to it.

Q. In what does the sovereign authority of the Kings of England immediately consist?

A. They alone have power to declare peace, or war; to make leagues, treaties, or to conclude a truce, to receive, or send out ambassadors, to coin money, but not to fix the current value of it, which is done by consent of Parliament only; to allow or repeal grants and privileges; to dispose of the several governments in their dominions, and all employments both of sea and land. In a word, all commissions, whether for life, or a certain limited time, are absolutely in their disposal.

Q. Does their power extend no farther?

A. They are heirs in the last resort in their Kingdom, that is, all estates where no heir appears, revert or escheat to the mean Lord first, and if there is none, then to the King.

Q. Pray continue.

A. They had the custody of the goods and estates of all minors that held of the crown; they might apply the revenues thereof to their own private use, except what was necessary for the minor's maintenance, till such time as he were one and twenty, when he is at age; and then they could not marry without their consent; but this has been taken away by the statute 12 Car. II. c. 24.

Q. Have the Kings of *England* any authority over the Parliament?

A. They alone have the power of summoning, proroguing, and dissolving it; they may refuse to give the royal assent to acts, without being obliged to declare the reason of their refusal; and the whole force and power of their statutes flow from them, and cannot pass into a law without their express consent.

Q. Is justice administered in the King of *England's* name?

A. In all parts of *Great Britain*, he is the supreme judge, or lord chief justice. He fills up all the offices of judicature; has liberty to preside in all tribunals, and in all cases, that of high-treason excepted, in which he himself is plaintiff.

Q. Has he no power in the church?

A. He is the supreme moderator and governor of the church of *England*, over all persons and in all cases, which title was taken up by Queen *Elizabeth*, instead of the *supreme Head*, which was used by *Henry VIII.* and *Edward VI.* He nominates to bishopricks, and several other benefices. He claims tenths and annats, and by his mandate to the archbishop assembles his clergy in convocation, nor have they power of sitting without such mandate.

Q. In what manner is the King of *England* waited upon?

A. In a kneeling posture, and no one is allowed to be cover'd before him, except *De Courcy* baron of *Kinsale* in *Ireland*.

Q. Who is the second person in the kingdom?

A. The Queen consort.

Q. Does she enjoy any peculiar privileges?

A. She

A. She may make whatever purchases she thinks proper in the kingdom, and dispose of them without an act of Parliament for her naturalization. She may remove her causes to whatever court she pleases; and if, when a widow, she should marry again, she would have all honours paid her as to a Queen, tho' she was to marry a private Gentleman.

Q. What title is given to the eldest son?

A. He is called prince of *Wales*, and is always heir apparent to the crown; and when he is fifteen, his subjects pay him homage.

Q. Is it many years since the Kings eldest son hath enjoy'd this title?

A. *Edward I.* (to compute, as the *English* do, from the *Norman* princes) won this principality in 1282, from *Llewellyn* the last prince of *Wales*; and he wholly abolished the authority of these princes by taking prisoner *David*, *Llewellyn's* brother, whom he beheaded in 1283.

Q. Which of the Kings of *England's* sons first had the title of Prince of *Wales*?

A. *Edward II.* who was born at *Caernarvon-castle* in that principality; the King having obliged his consort to go and lye-in there, that they might be the better pleased with the Prince he was going to set over them.

Q. Has the Kings eldest son any other Title?

A. Yes; he is born duke of *Cornwall*, in respect to which he is of age at the very day of his birth, so as to claim livery and seisin of the said dukedom.

Q. When was this honour first settled on the King's eldest son?

A. By *Edward III.* and it is to be observed that it does not descend by virtue of that Monarch's grant to the heir of the crown of *England* in general, but to the son, and him the first begotten son of the King. So *Richard de Bourdeaux*, son to the black prince, who died without coming to the crown, was not duke of *Cornwall* by birth, but was created so by charter. Nor was *Henry VIII.* after the death of his brother Prince *Arthur* duke of *Cornwall*, because he was not the eldest son.

Q. Has the Prince of *Wales* any settled revenue?

A. He has about twenty thousand pounds sterling arising from the mines in the dukedom of *Cornwall*. His present Majesty, when prince, had 100,000 *l. per ann.* settled upon him by act of Parliament.

Q. At what age is he sovereign of *Wales*?

A. At fourteen; till which time it used to be governed by commissioners chosen from the body of the nobility and clergy.

Q. Have the rest of the King's children any titles appropriated to them?

A. No, the King bestows whatever titles he pleases upon them. We are only to observe, that the title of *Royal Highness* is given them, and that whoever kisses their hands must do it kneeling.

Q. Has the King any fixed revenues?

A. The Parliament passed an act in the year 1660, in favour of King *Charles II.* by which it was ordained, that henceforward the King's yearly revenues should be fixed at twelve hundred thousand pounds sterling, which sum added to certain other taxes, produces his majesty a yearly revenue of fifteen hundred thousand pounds sterling, which amounts to about twenty millions of *French* money. The ordinary charge of the government, or *Civil List*, as it is now called, was, upon her late majesty's accession to the crown, settled by Parliament at 700,000 *l. per annum*, upon the best funds in *England*. His present majesty's is settled at 800,000 *l.* which it is justly thought produces about a million.

Of the PARLIAMENT.

Q. WHAT is the Parliament of *England*?

A. The general assembly of the estates of the kingdom.

Q. By whom was it instituted?

A. In a large sense it is as old, no doubt, as the *Saxon* government in this Kingdom. And though the commons

commons were undoubtedly always represented in it, yet the manner how they were represented, is not certain, there being no summons of them upon record before 49 Henry III. when they first began to be a distinct house, much in the same manner they are now.

Q. Whence was it originally derived?

A. From the parliaments, assemblies, or diets of the northern nations, whence the *Anglo-Saxons* came. It was not indeed held so frequently under the first *British* Kings, as under the *Plantagenets*, when it began to make itself formidable.

Q. By what steps has it risen to that height of power it has sometimes assum'd?

A. This was owing either to the avarice, or profuseness of some Kings; their adherence to their favourites; or the ambition of some particular persons.

Q. In what manner did the avarice and profusion of the Kings give authority to the Parliament?

A. As the yearly revenues fixed by the state fell short of the sums expended, the Kings were obliged to impose taxes; and the monies arising from hence having been employ'd to different uses, or lavish'd on favourites; all such great men as did not share in them, oppos'd them; and after several insurrections they assum'd to themselves a power, of not suffering the King to levy any other taxes, than such as had been granted him by the states of the kingdom.

Q. When did the Parliament assume this authority?

A. Under the reign of King *John*, and they confirm'd it to themselves under that of his son, who, as he was always in want of money, used to convene them very often. 'Twas in these assemblies only that they came to such resolutions, as almost destroy'd the kingly authority.

Q. Did not the King oppose their measures?

A. It was not in his power to do it, he having been scarce able to preserve his crown. Besides, the methods which he and all weak princes have employed to maintain their authority, have serv'd only to destroy it entirely.

Q. In

Q. In what manner?

A. When-ever the defenders of liberty had fix'd too narrow bounds to the royal authority, and had caused their resolutions to be passed into a law by Parliament, the King no sooner got the upper-hand, than he would convene such a Parliament as was either faithful, or had been brib'd by him, in order to repeal the acts made by the former. In this manner the Parliament, whether obstinate or humble, had always the upper-hand under weak Kings, whereof there have been many in *England*.

Q. Was the Parliament as powerful under the renown'd Kings?

A. It did no more than barely put their commands in execution, and had only the power of approving their designs. *Edward III*, *Henry IV*, *V*, *VII*, and *VIII*, and *Queen Elizabeth* made the Parliament subservient to their will; but it has not been so pliable since.

Q. Why so?

A. Because it is generally composed of two parties, whereof the first, who are so many creatures of the court, seldom fail of being balanced by the defenders of the liberty and privileges of their country. 'Tis this mutual opposition that occasioned the death of *Charles* the first, and all the revolutions that have happen'd since that time.

Q. Are these the only steps by which the Parliament has risen to this exalted power?

A. We must likewise add, the great love some Kings have had for favourites, and the hatred which the *English* bear to all those who are in favour; and as favourites have never had any power but under weak kings, it was no difficult matter for the great men of the kingdom to give the government whatever form they thought proper; but the ambition of certain men has carried matters to still greater lengths.

Q. What methods did they employ?

A. Some Princes, whose aim was to seize upon the crown, sought out methods to give some colour to their usurpation; this they often were not able to effect, but by laying several crimes to the charge of the reigning Monarch;

Monarch ; and as it was necessary to have some power which might take cognizance of these crimes, they have made choice of the Parliament, which, by the undoubted right it has of regulating the succession to the crown, has by this means frequently pronounced the fate of these Monarchs?

Q. What examples have we had of this?

A. The Parliament called *Edward II.* to account, by order of his Queen and his eldest Son ; and with their consent depos'd him, and placed *Edward III.* on the throne. The divisions between the houses of *York* and *Lancaster* furnish us with a great number of examples of this kind.

Q. Pray relate some of these.

A. *Edward IV.* caused *Henry VI.* to be declar'd unworthy of wearing the crown ; had him depos'd and condemn'd to perpetual imprisonment. *Henry* having gain'd all the advantages over his enemy he could possibly have wish'd, caused him to be condemn'd to be beheaded ; as guilty of high-treason.

Q. Of whom does the Parliament consist?

A. Of the three estates, the lords spiritual, the lords temporal, and commons: the two first compose the upper house, and the commons the lower. Some authors make the King one of the three estates in Parliament, reckoning the lords spiritual and temporal as another. But this against the express testimony of several statutes.

Q. Who are those that have seats in the house of peers?

A. The King, the princes of the blood, the bishops, dukes, marquisses, earls, viscounts, and barons, or lords, whose number, including the 16 peers that serve for *Scotland*, generally amounts to near two hundred ; and by a statute made 30 *Car. II.* the lords that conform not to the protestant religion, no longer sit, or give their votes in the house of lords.

Q. Do no others sit there occasionally?

A. Yes ; the judges, the King's counsel at law, the masters in chancery, when called to give their advice in point of law. But they are not to sit in the King's
presence

presence without his leave. Add to these the clerk of the crown, and clerk of parliament; the last of whom has two under clerks, who write kneeling, behind him.

Q. Who are those that compose the house of commons?

A. The two deputies, or representatives, of each of the forty counties, into which *England* is divided; those of the twenty six cities, each of which hath a right to send two, except the city of *London*, which sends four; the representatives of the universities of *Oxford* and *Cambridge*; the barons of the cinque-ports, and 330 burgesses of 168 towns in *England*, each of which sends one or two, according to their privileges; 24 from the towns of the principality of *Wales*; and lastly the 45 from *Scotland*; making in all 558 members. But if forty are present they constitute a house.

Q. Whence are these representatives elected?

A. Most commonly from among the sons or relations of the nobility, and gentry; and the counties, in order to do themselves more honour, often make choice of the sons of dukes, marquisses, earls and lords, when they have passed their one and twentieth year, which is the age appointed by the laws.

Q. In what does the authority of the Parliament consist?

A. In making new laws, reviving or abrogating old ones: and no law is made without being read three times in both houses, and having at last the royal assent. But a bill of indemnity coming from the throne has only one reading in each house.

Q. Must all laws be first begun in the house of lords?

A. No; it is indifferent in which house a law is first proposed; except subsidy bills, which must be begun by the commons, and brought in by order of the house.

Q. What is the business of the house of lords distinct from the commons?

A. They may try causes of life and death, and in civil causes give final sentence in appeals from all other courts. And in cases of felony and treason, have a right

(II)

right of trying their own peers; and in all other cases where the commons impeach.

Q. What is the peculiar business of the house of commons?

A. To examine elections; to expel their own members; to commit them or others to prison; to present publick grievances to be redress'd, and publick delinquents to be punished. To which purpose, when the Parliament is sitting, the commons have the power of impeaching any person how great soever, before the lords who are the judges. But the greatest prerogative is their preparing money bills, which I mentioned before.

Q. What method is taken in proposing any new law?

A. It is put into writing, and brought in by some one member, and seconded by another. Every member may speak for or against it once, but must not make any reply in a second speech, unless in committees, whether select ones, or of the whole house.

Q. Where is the Parliament held?

A. Wherever the King pleases; but it has for these many years been held in *Westminster*.

Of the CLERGY.

Q. IN what does the Clergy of *England* consist?

A. In two archbishops, viz. of *Canterbury* and *York*, 24 bishops, 26 deans of chapters, 60 archdeacons 544 prebends, and upwards of 9700 rectors of Parishes, each of whom have the care of one church, and sometimes of more, and a great number of curates under them; all who are the episcopal clergy.

Q. What authority have the two archbishops?

A. The archbishop of *Canterbury* is the first peer of the realm, and takes place of all except the royal family. He usually crowns the King or Queen, and is always one of the lords of privy council. The archbishop of *York* takes place of all peers, next him, except the lord chancellor, and usually crowns the queen consort. The one is styled primate of *England*, the other of all

England. They both by the King's mandate call the clergy of their respective diocesses to convocation, are both presidents of it, and prorogue and dissolve it at the direction of the King. They censure other bishops within their province. Appoint coadjutors to other bishops, when infirm. Have their court of arches, to which lye appeals from the courts of other bishops. Have probate of wills. Have the option of any one dignity in the gift of every bishop consecrated or confirmed by him, at least the former has this privilege, if not the latter.

Q. What authority have the Bishops?

A. They confer orders and confirm; give ministers leave to preach, and perform the rest of the pastoral functions in their several diocesses.

Q. What are deans and chapters?

A. They were anciently a body of clergy, of standing council to the bishop, that lived with him at his cathedral, and were maintained by him; till by degrees their dependance on him grew less, and they had distinct parcels of his estate assign'd them, and were made collegiate bodies, and have now not only authority within their own body, but sometimes ecclesiastical jurisdiction in several neighbouring parishes and deanries, and generally temporal jurisdiction to hold courts of pleas within their own manors.

Q. Are there no other deans, besides deans of chapters?

A. Yes; the deans of *Croyden* in *Surrey*, *Battle* in *Sussex*, and *Bocking* in *Essex*, and some few others are deans without any chapter; but have a peculiar sort of jurisdiction; deans of the chapel royal, *St. George's* chapel at *Windso*r, *Rippon* and *Guernsey* are only honorary deans, without jurisdiction. There were likewise rural deans or archpresbyters, who, under the bishop and archdeacon had the peculiar care of those districts into which our diocesses are still divided, called *deanries*. Their authority and use is now almost wholly lost, few diocesses having any, and in these they are but annually chosen by the clergy at their visitations, and their business

sinefs only to make an entertainment for their brethren.

Q. What is the office of an archdeacon?

A. He was chofe anciently from among the deacons to be an affiftant likewise to the bifhop; but by the act of uniformity, he is now obliged to be in prieft's orders. And whereas the bifhop makes a vifitation of his diocefe once in three years, 'tis the archdeacon's office to vifit it for him the other two.

Q. Which is the moft confiderable feft in *England*?

A. That of the Prefbyterians, which feems the more fo, becaufe many other fefts, which agree with them in one common principle of rejecting epifcopacy, go under that denomination.

Q. Name me the other fefts.

A. Thofe of the Independents, the Anabaptifts, the Quakers, to whom we may add the Arians, Philadelphians, and many more; not to mention the *Roman* Catholicks, whofe eftates are double taxed, and are debarred from prefenting to livings, but in other refpects are rarely molefted, provided they are obedient to the government.

Of the NOBILITY.

Q. IN what manner is the nobility of *England* diftinguifhed?

A. Into the nobility, properly fo called; and the gentry.

Q. Whom do you comprehend under the title of the nobility?

A. Dukes, marquiffes, earls, vifcounts and barons.

Q. Is the title of duke of any antiquity among the *English*?

A. We are told that it was firft beftow'd in the year 1335, on *Edward* prince of *Wales*, call'd the *black prince*, of whom mention will be made in the battles of *Cressy* and *Poitiers*, who was then created duke of *Cornwall*.

Q. Of what antiquity are the titles of marquiffes and vifcounts?

C

A. The

A. The title of marquis was first conferred by King Richard II. anno 1385. on Robert de Vere, earl of Oxford, who was created marquiss of Dublin. And the first that bore the title of viscount was John Beaumont, created viscount Beaumont by King Henry VI. anno 1439. Feb. 12. The ancientest titles of all, are those of earl and baron.

Q. Have the peers any high privileges?

A. They have entrance, suffrage, and seats in Parliament; nor can be arrested, unless in cases of high-treason, felony, breach of peace, condemnation in Parliament, or contempt to the King; their suits are immediately try'd in the house of peers; and they cannot be try'd for felony or treason, or for misdeameanor when the commons impeach, but by their peers, unless in cases of appeal for murder.

Q. Are these all their privileges?

A. When they are sent for to Parliament, they have liberty to hunt in the King's grounds, either in going to, or returning from it. Those who any ways injure them, are punish'd by the statute of *scandalum magnatum*. Neither the sheriff or his officers are allow'd to search their houses in some cases, without the King's order first obtain'd, sign'd by six privy counsellors: in a word, they have a great many other privileges.

Q. Are not the dukes distinguish'd by a peculiar habit?

A. They wear a ducal cap and a mantle of state, which they are allow'd to appear in wherever the King is not present, but obliged to wear when they attend him in the Parliament or at the coronation,

Q. Do the other peers wear ceremonial mantles?

A. Yes, but not to mention that one degree of nobility differs from the other, a marquis may not wear his ceremonial mantle in presence of a duke, an earl in presence of a marquis, a viscount in presence of an earl, and a baron in presence of a viscount, except in the parliament-house, or at the coronation of a King or Queen.

Q. In what other particulars do they still differ?

A. In these, viz. that all the younger sons of dukes and marquisses are lords; an earl's eldest son bears the same

same title ; but his younger sons, and those of viscounts, and all the male children of barons, are no more than private gentlemen.

Q. Are not the coronets used by the nobility of a very ancient date ?

A. Those belonging to earls were appointed about King *Edward* the third's time ; those of viscounts in King *James* the first's reign ; and those of barons in that of King *Charles* II.

Q. Whom do you understand by the gentry ?

A. Baronets, knights and esquires, who are all gentlemen, simply so call'd, and make part of the commons.

Of the third Estate.

Q. OF whom is the third estate compos'd ?

A. Of the gentry or lower nobility, the gentlemen of the long robe, of yeomen, of free-holders, merchants, keepers of publick-houses, tradesmen, and peasants.

Of the English in general.

Q. PRAY describe the persons of the *English* ?

A. They are for the most part handsome, grey-ey'd, fair complexion'd, have light hair, and are well shap'd. Their women are very beautiful, and have greater privileges than those of other countries.

Q. What have you to say to their qualities ?

A. They have naturally good sense, and succeed in whatever they undertake ; are great sticklers for religion, and still more so in maintaining their privileges ; they run all hazards to get them restor'd, whenever they are depriv'd of them.

Q. You have not taken any notice of their inclinations with respect to war.

A. That they are a brave people, is not to be disputed ; they are seldom seen to flinch, but are not able to support very great fatigues, being naturally soft and little inclin'd

to labour; they are born with a patience which is often of more advantage to them than a warm temper.

Q. Are the *English* great traders?

A. Yes; particularly since King *Henry* the seventh's time. This monarch considering in what manner he might best employ his subjects, in order to leave them no leisure to meditate on insurrections, open'd to them a trade by sea, which they have since carried on with great success, as well as sincerity and honour.

Of England in general.

Q. IS the air of *England* healthy?

A. It is so healthy, that we often see some of its natives enjoy a perfect health till 100 years of age; however, it does not seem to be so, it being very thick, and so clogg'd with mists and fogs, especially at *London*, that people can sometimes scarce see one another in the streets, at very little distance.

Q. Are fogs very frequent?

A. So frequent, that 'tis almost a general rule in *London*, that if the morning is not foggy, it certainly rains in the afternoon; and in case a fog rises in the morning, one is almost sure of having a fine afternoon: and this rule holds good for most parts of *England*.

Q. We may therefore suppose this country to be very cold?

A. Less than one would imagine it to be, for the warm winds that blow from the western ocean, soften very much the severity of the cold.

Q. What are the qualities of the soil?

A. It is fat and fruitful, yielding every thing in great abundance that is necessary for life; and if grapes could ripen in it, it would certainly be one of the best countries in the world. It abounds in game; the sea and the rivers furnish great quantities of fish; the meadows are cover'd with oxen, cows and sheep; their milk, butter, cheese, beef and mutton are exceeding good.

Q. In what do the principal revenues of the country consist?

A. In

A. In the traffick of their wool, which is very fine, and their cloth, which for its beauty and goodness, is prefer'd to silk.

Q. Have they great number of tame animals?

A. I have already observ'd, that the meadows were cover'd with great and small cattle, and shall add, that they have horses for war, for hunting, and the plough, which are as high-mettled as those of *Spain*, are much longer-winded, but very tender-hoof'd. They have some asses, but few mules: a great number of mastiffs, which are more esteem'd than those of any other part of *Europe*.

Q. Is it true that there are no wolves in *England*?

A. They were formerly so numerous, that the Kings of *England* laid a tribute of a hundred wolves heads on the inhabitants of *Wales*; and it was very usual for a person condemn'd to die, to have his punishment chang'd to a mulct of a certain number of heads of these animals; by which means they were all kill'd, insomuch that there was not so much as one left alive.

Q. Are there any mines in it?

A. *Strabo* tells us that it had golden mines, and *Cicero* was of the same opinion, but there are none found in these days: there are a few silver mines in the principality of *Wales*; there are also a great number of lead and iron mines; and 'tis well known that *Cornwall* furnishes the best tin in the world; and that coal-pits, particularly about *Newcastle*, and quarries of stone, are found in several places.

Q. Name me the chief rivers of *England*.

A. The *Thames*, the *Severn*, and the *Humber*.

SAXON KINGS.

EGBERT, *the First Monarch of* England.

From the Year 801, to 838.

Popes.

LEO III.	795	MICHAEL I.	811
STEPHEN V.	816	LEO V.	813
PASCAL I.	817	MICHAEL II.	820
EUGENIUS II.	824	THEOPHILUS I.	829
VALENTINE I.	827	<i>Emperors of the West and Kings of France.</i>	
GREGORY IV.	827		

Emperors of the East.

		CHARLEMAINE.	800
IRENE <i>Empress</i>	797	<i>and King of France</i>	768
NICEPHORUS I.	802	LEWIS I.	814

2. WHO was the first Monarch of England?

A. Egbert, the last King of the *West-Saxons*.

2. Whose son was he?

A. Of *Alcmund*, descended from *Inigisl*, brother to *Ina*, King of the *West-Saxons*. His distinguish'd merit rais'd the jealousy of several persons in the court of King *Bristric*; where he did not meet with the Reception he expected, and having been condemn'd to lose his head, he fled, and by that means escaped the fury of his enemies.

2. To whom did he fly?

A. To *Offa*, King of the *Mercians*, and afterwards to the court of *Charlemain* King of *France*.

2. What reception did he meet with from *Charlemain*?

A. The

A. The King, charm'd with his fine qualities, treated him with great distinction at his court, for near twelve years, and made him accompany him in his journey to *Frankfort*, and afterwards to *Rome*?

Q. Was any thing remarkable done at this time at *Rome*?

A. Pope *Leo III.* set the imperial crown on *Charlemain's* head.

Q. When did this happen?

A. On *Christmas-day* in *St. Peter's* church, the year of our Lord 801, a little after the death of *Brithric*.

Q. What did *Egbert*, when he heard of his death?

A. Having taken leave of *Charlemain*, who presented him with the sword which he himself wore, he set out with all speed for the kingdom of the *West-Saxons*.

Q. Was he favourably receiv'd by the people thereof?

A. With incredible joy; this was in the year 801. The gentleness of his administration increased their affection to him, and by their assistance he conquer'd the *Britons* who inhabited the coasts of *Cornwall* and *Wales*. He defeated *Witglaph*, King of the *Mercians*, conquer'd his kingdom, and afterwards turning his arms against the Kings of *Kent*, of *East-Anglia*, and of *Essex*, he made himself master of their territories.

Q. What did he after he had united these kingdoms to his own, and obliged the King of the *North-humbers* to become his vassal?

A. He gave orders that all the country which was subject to him, should thenceforward be call'd *England*; so that he is consider'd as the first sovereign of all the *Anglo-Saxon* nation.

Q. Was the remaining part of his reign peaceable?

A. Yes, except that towards the conclusion of it he was molested by the *Danes*, who in 833 made a descent in *England*, and defeated the army which he sent against them.

Q. Did they long enjoy the fruits of their victory?

A. No, for two years after *Egbert* routed them entirely; drove them back to their ships, and out of all parts of *England*, and they never return'd back to it during his reign.

Q. What

Q. What is the character of this prince?

A. He had all the qualities requir'd in a conqueror.

Q. How long time did he reign?

A. Thirty seven years and seven months. He died in 838. (or according to others in 836. or 837.) and was interr'd at *Winchester*.

ETHELWULF, II^d King of England.

From 838 to 858.

Popes.

GREGORY IV.	827	MICHAEL III.	842
SERGIUS II.	844	<i>Emperors of the West, and Kings of France.</i>	
LEO IV.	847		
BENEDICT III.	855	LEWIS I.	814
<i>Emperors of the East.</i>		LOTHARIUS	840
THEOPHILUS I.	829	LEWIS II.	855

Q. WHO succeeded Egbert?

A. *Ethelmulf*, his son, who began his reign in 838, or as others 836.

Q. Had Egbert no other children?

A. It does not appear he had, which makes it the more improbable, what some historians assert, that *Ethelmulf* was educated in the view of being made an ecclesiastick. It is certain he commanded an army in the twenty fourth of his father's reign: though that he might do and be an ecclesiastick; as *Alstan*, bishop of *Sherburn*, and others did.

Q. What character do historians give of him?

A. That he was a pious, wise, valiant and clement prince; a lover of peace, and very zealous for religion.

Q. What remarkable transactions happen'd under his reign?

A. The Danes enter'd *England*, took and plunder'd *London*; but he march'd against them, cut most of them to pieces in 851; however, they return'd back two years after.

Q. What

Q. What success had the *Danes* in this second descent?

A. *Ethelwulf* defeated them a second time, gain'd two such compleat victories over them, the one at sea, the other at land, that not one of them escap'd to acquaint his countrymen with this ill news.

Q. To whom did he ascribe these glorious advantages?

A. To the God of armies; and to give a more illustrious testimony of his gratitude, he, from a principle of devotion, made a journey to *Rome* with his son, where he met with a gracious reception from Pope *Leo IV.*

Q. What did he in favour of the Holy-See?

A. He made his kingdom tributary to it, and oblig'd each family in his dominions to pay a shilling annually; and this is what in *England* was call'd *Rome-scot* or *Peter's-pence.*

Q. Are we not told that he caus'd his son to sign the instrument by which he bound himself to pay this tribute?

A. Yes, and likewise thirty barons his attendants, which tribute was paid till *Henry VIII.* put a stop to it.

Q. Did *Ethelwulf* enjoy a long reign?

A. He reign'd 20 years, and died in 857.

Q. Was he ever married?

A. Twice; first with *Osburgh* an *English* princess; and afterwards with *Judith* daughter of *Charles the Bald*, whom he caus'd to be crown'd with the consent of the three estates of this kingdom.

Q. What was the motive of his convening them?

A. In order to give a sanction to this ceremony, and to ratify the instrument by which he had oblig'd them to pay a tribute to the Holy-See.

Q. Had he any children?

A. Not by his last consort, and an historian assures us that their marriage was not consummated; but he had five sons by his first Queen; the first of them, *Athelstan*, was King of *Kent*, but died before his father; the rest succeeded him in the whole monarchy; besides a daughter, who having married *Butbred* King of *Mercia*, died at *Pavia* in 888. The *Saxon Annals* inform us, that about this time, *Edmund*, being fifteen years of age, was crown'd King of the *East-Angles*. He was son of *Alc-*
mund

mund, (a prince of the blood-royal of the *East-Angles*) who had retir'd to *Germany*, when *Offa* possess'd himself of the kingdom of the *East-Angles*.

ETHELBALD and ETHELBERT, jointly making the III^d King of England.

From 858 to 860.

Popes.	Emp. of the East.	Emp. of the West and K. of France.
BENEDICT III. 855	MICHAEL III. 842	LEWIS II. 855
NICHOLAS I. 858		

2. WHICH of *Ethelwulf's* sons succeeded him?

A. *Ethelbald* his eldest son, who had rebelled against his father, (during the journey he made to *Rome*) in order to make himself King in his absence.

2. When did he begin his reign?

A. In the year 858.

2. What character do you give of this prince?

A. That he had neither the piety nor valour of his father, or of his grandfather; by which means he drew upon himself the hatred of his subjects.

2. Did he perform any remarkable action?

A. No, for reigning but two years, he had as little opportunity as disposition to signalize himself.

2. Whom did he marry?

A. *Judith*, his father's second wife, who afterwards married *Baldwin* earl of *Flanders*, from whom descended *Maud* the wife of *William* the conqueror. But this King left no issue.

ETHELBERT, VIth King of England.

From 860 to 866.

<i>Popes.</i>	<i>Emp. of the East.</i>	<i>Emp. of the West and K. of France.</i>
NICHOLAS I. 858.	MICHAEL III. 842	LEWIS II. 858

Q. **E**thelbald leaving no issue, who succeeded him?
 A. His brother *Ethelbert*, who before was King of *Kent*, *Essex*, and *Sussex*.

Q. What character is given of this Monarch?

A. That he was sweet-temper'd, wise, valiant, and very pious.

Q. By what action did he signalize himself?

A. The *Danes* having invaded his dominions, and seiz'd upon *Winchester*, which they burnt to ashes, he took the field against them at the head of a numerous army, and by totally routing them, compleated what *Osric* and *Ethelwulf*, earls of the *West-Saxons*, had begun.

Q. Did he gain any other victory?

A. No; but he was making preparations for more considerable exploits, when death put a stop to them in the year 866, which was the sixth of his reign.

ETHELRED, Vth King of England.

From 866 to 872.

<i>Popes.</i>	<i>Emp. of the East.</i>	<i>Emp. of the West and K. of France.</i>
NICHOLAS I. 858	MICHAEL III. 842	LEWIS II. 855
ADRIAN II. 867	BASILIIUS I. 867	

Q. **W**HO succeeded *Ethelbert*?

A. His brother *Ethelred*, who ascended the throne in 866, by virtue of *Ethelwulf*'s will.

Q. What

Q. What is particularly observ'd of this prince?

A. That all his actions had piety for their principle. He is also applauded for his valour, prudence, and justice.

Q. What actions did he perform in the beginning of his reign?

A. He drove out the *Danes*, who had invaded his dominions; entirely laid waste the kingdom of the *East-Angles*; took and plunder'd the city of *York*, and made dreadful havock in the kingdom of *Mercia*.

Q. What other memorable actions did he perform?

A. He sent succours to the King of the *Mercians*, who was infested by the abovemention'd barbarians, and defeated them; but in another battle his army was routed very near *Wittingham*, and he himself lost his life.

Q. When did this misfortune happen to him?

A. *Anno* 872, in the sixth year of his reign.

Q. Did the *Danes* make any advantage of this victory?

A. They fortified themselves in the kingdom of the *East-Angles*, of which they had dispossest'd *Edmund* in 870, and were very troublesome to King *Alfred* his brother and successor.

Q. Had he any children?

A. Yes, a son called *Alfred*, who was great-grandfather to *Ethelward* the historian.

ALFRED, surnam'd the Great, VIth King of England.

From 872 to 900.

Popes.		Emperors of the West and Kings of France.	
JOHN VIII.	872	LEWIS II.	855
MARTIN II.	882	CHARLES II.	873
ADRIAN III.	884	CHARLES III.	880
STEPHEN VI.	885	ARNOLD	888
FORMOSUS	890	LEWIS III.	899
Emperors of the East.			
BASILIIUS I.	867		
LEO VI.	886		

Q. WHO was *Ethelred's* successor?

A. *Alfred* his brother, who began his reign in 872.

Q. Was he not a prince of a very great character?

A. Few *English* monarchs have possess'd such great accomplishments; for he was constant and resolute in adversity; moderate in prosperity; and with wonderful patience sought for expedients to extricate himself when unsuccessful; skilful in making his advantage of all opportunities; in a word, he was brave without rashness, devout without affectation; magnificent, liberal, and adorn'd with so many virtues as justly merited him the surname of *Great*.

Q. What success had he in the beginning of his reign?

A. Very bad; for the *Danes*, who were now vastly numerous in *England*, fell upon him with so much fury, in the battle of *Wilton*, where he was defeated, that he was glad to have only part of *England* left him by a treaty. He indeed had so much credit left, as to oblige them to give him hostages for the better security of this peace.

Q. Did it last for any time?

A. Till the *Danes* found an opportunity of breaking it to their advantage.

Q. Were they successful in this new war?

A. *Rollo*, the famous *Norman* chief, arriv'd in *England* with a fleet; but found *Alfred* on his guard; so was oblig'd to seek his fortune in *France*. The *Danes* assembled a great army, and took *Chipenham* in *West-Sex*, which surpris'd the *West-Saxons* so much, that they all abandon'd *Alfred*, who withdrew into the county of *Somerset*, in the island of *Athelinge* in a neat-herd's cott.

Q. Did he continue long there?

A. As *Rollo* had drawn off his forces, and *Hubba*, one of the most formidable *Danish* generals, having been defeated by the *English*, whom he had besieged in a stronghold; *Alfred* put himself at the head of an army, totally routed the *Danes*, and forced them to leave his dominions, or be baptized.

Q. Did any of them yield to the latter?

A. Yes; and among the rest *Guthrum*, to whom King
D. *Alfred*

Alfred gave the kingdoms of *Northumberland* and *East-Angles*, upon condition he should do homage to him for them.

Q. Did the *Danes* return again to *England*?

A. Not once, during the remaining part of this reign, when *Alfred* finding that all his dominions enjoy'd an uninterrupted calm, made a voyage to *Rome*, where he got *Adrian II.* to set the crown upon his head.

Q. In what did he chiefly employ himself after his return from *Rome*?

A. In enacting good laws for the security of his subjects, and in encouraging arts and sciences, which were then drooping; and for that purpose he founded the university of *Oxford*. He invited several learned men from foreign countries, and settled pensions on them. He built two magnificent abbeys, and endow'd them with very rich revenues, and rebuilt the city of *London*, which had been entirely ruin'd in the late wars. Among other good regulations, it was he that instituted juries, and divided the Kingdom into shires, hundreds, and tythings.

Q. Of what disease did he die?

A. Of a contraction of the nerves, which, for two years together, had put him to excessive pain.

Q. In what year did he die?

A. In 900, which was the 28th of his reign.

King EDWARD the Elder, VIIth King of England.

From 900 to 924.

Popes.		Emperors of the East.	
STEPHEN VII.	885	LEO VI.	886
THEODORE II.	901	ALEXANDER II.	911
JOHN IX.	901	CONST. PORPH.	912
BENEDICT IV.	905	Emperors of the West.	
LEO V.	905	LEWIS III.	899
CHRISTOPHER	906	CONRAD I.	912
SERGIUS III.	907	HENRY I.	919
ANASTASIUS III.	910	Kings of France.	
LONDON	912	CHARLES IV.	898
JOHN X.	913	ROBERT II.	922
		RAOUL I.	923

2. WHICH of the two sons of *Alfred* succeeded him?

A. *Edward* his eldest son, who began his reign anno 900, and was surnam'd *the Elder*.

2. Why was that name given him?

A. From his hair being white from his infancy. Or, rather on account of his being prior in time to *Edward the Martyr*, and *Edward the Confessor*; and to distinguish him from them.

2. What were the qualities of this monarch?

A. He possess'd all his father's good ones, his love for learning and gentleness excepted; but was equal to him for valour, piety, zeal, a due administration of justice, and for the love he bore his subjects.

2. How old was he when he succeeded the King his father?

A. This is not certain; all we know is, that he was a minor, and that during the former part of his reign

his mother was regent of the kingdom. However Mr. *Rapin* makes no mention of that regency.

Q. How did she conduct herself in the administration?

A. With so much gentleness and equity, that her memory was dear to the *English* many ages after her death.

Q. Did *Edward* perform any memorable action?

A. He obliged *Constantine III.* King of *Scotland*, to sue to him for peace; forced the *Welsh*, who had revolted, to return to their allegiance. *Ethelward*, son of *Ethelbert*, took up arms against him, and heading the *Danes* of the kingdom of *Mercia*, who had crown'd him King thereof, they were forc'd to abandon him; *Edward* having come upon them by surprise with a powerful army, before they were in a condition to defend themselves. *Ethelward* then retir'd into *Normandy*, where he obtain'd a powerful succour of *Normans*, and cross'd again to *Essex*, where he ventur'd a battle, but lost his life in it.

Q. Are these the most remarkable actions we meet with in King *Edward's* life?

A. He united the kingdom of *Northumberland* and that of the *East-Angles* to his crown; founded the university of *Cambridge*, (but all are not agreed upon this article) and took a particular care of the education of his children.

Q. Had he many?

A. By *Elfreda* his first wife, he had six daughters, who were all nuns, except *Edgiva*, who was married to *Charles the Simple*, King of *France*; and *Edilda*, second wife of *Hugh* furnam'd the Great, father of *Hugh Capet*, descended from the third race of the Kings of *France*. By *Edgiva*, his second Queen, he had two sons, viz. *Edmund* and *Edred*, who both succeeded to the crown. He had also by *Egwina*, a natural son call'd *Athelstan*, who immediately succeeded him.

Q. How many years did he reign?

A. Twenty four, and died in 925.

ATHELSTAN, VIIIth King of England.

From 925 to 941.

Popes.		Emperor of the East.	
JOHN X.	913	CONSTAN. PORPH.	912
LEO VI.	928	Emperors of the West.	
STEPHEN VIII.	929	HENRY I.	912
JOHN XI.	931	OTHO I.	936
LEO VII.	936	Kings of France.	
STEPHEN IX.	939	RAOUL I.	923
		LEWIS IV.	936

2. WERE any of the sons of *Edward the Elder* of age to succeed him?

A. None but *Athelstan* his natural son, whose rare and uncommon virtues throwing a shade over the defects of his birth, the *English* unanimously set the crown upon his head in 925.

2. Did he accept it?

A. Yes; upon condition, that after his decease it should revert to the legitimate Children of his father.

2. Did he signalize himself so as to answer the high expectations the *English* had conceived of him?

A. He gained several victories over his enemies.

2. Pray give some account of them.

A. He forced *Hoel*, King of *Wales* to pay him tribute; defeated several times *Constantine III*, King of *Scotland*, who lost his Life in the battle of *Brunanburg*, with six other *Irish* and *Welsh* Kings; the success of this battle is ascribed chiefly to the bravery of *Turketul*, *Athelstan's* cousin, afterwards abbot of *Croyland*: Took the capital city of the *North-Britons*, and seized upon the dominions of their King. Nor was he less successful in his wars against the *Britons* who inhabited the west of *England*, for he dispossessed them of their kingdom, after having taken *Exeter*, the chief city thereof.

D 3

2. What

Q. What other considerable actions did he perform ?

A. He conquer'd the *Cornish Britons*, and entirely ruin'd the power of the *Danes*, by seizing upon the citadel of *York*, which he razed.

Q. Are these the only remarkable transactions of his reign ?

A. He protected *Queen Edgina*, King *Edward's* daughter, and wife to *Charles the Simple*, King of *France*, who fled for refuge to his court with the King her son, in order to secure him from the cruelty of the usurper *Raoul*; he likewise contributed very much to the restoration of *Lewis* surnamed *Transmarine*, whom he recommended to the favour of *William* surnamed *Longsword*, Duke of *Normandy*. In his time lived *Guy* of *Warwick*, famous for overcoming *Colbrand* the *Danish* champion, the great *Goliath* of that people, near the walls of the city of *Winchester*.

Q. Did he enjoy a long reign ?

A. During sixteen years, and died the 28th of October 941.

EDMUND surnam'd the PIOUS, IXth King of England.

From 941 to 948.

Popes.		Emperor of the West.	
STEPHEN IX.	939	OTHO I.	936
MARTIN III.	943	King of France.	
Emperor of the East.		LEWIS IV.	936
CONSTAN. PORPH.	912		

Q. WHO succeeded *Athelstan* ?

A. *Edmund* surnam'd the Pious, the legitimate and eldest son of King *Edward*.

Q. What character is given of this Prince ?

A. 'Tis manifest from his surname, that he was chiefly distinguished for his piety; he was a great lover of justice. The prosperity he enjoyed, his bravery and capacity,

capacity, made him much respected, not only in his own island, but by foreigners also.

Q. What were his most memorable actions?

A. He gave admirable laws to his subjects; defeated the *Northumbrians*, who had rebell'd; gave up the counties of *Cumberland* and *Westmorland* to *Malcolm King of Scots*, upon condition that this prince should engage himself to do homage to him for it; and come to the court of the King of *England* at all high festivals, whenever he should be summoned to attend. He granted great privileges to the churches.

Q. In what manner did he die?

A. He was assassinated as he was feasting among his nobility at his manor of *Puckle-Kirk* in *Gloucestershire*, where he was celebrating the memory of the conversion of the *Saxons*, on *Tuesday*, the 26th of *May* 948, in the eighth year of his reign.

Q. Who perpetrated this horrid murder?

A. One *Leolf*, a vile wretch whom he had banish'd.

Q. Did he leave any children?

A. He had two sons by *Elgiva* his Queen, viz. *Edwin* or *Edwy*, and *Edgar*, who being too young to take upon them the administration of the kingdom, did not immediately succeed him.

EDRED, Xth King of England.

From 948 to 955.

Pope.		Emperor of the West.	
AGAPETUS.	946	OTHO I.	936
	Emperor of the East.		King of France.
CONSTAN. PORPH.	912	LEWIS IV.	936.

Q. WHO succeeded to the crown of *England* after the death of *Edmund*?

A. *Edred* second son of *Edward the Elder*.

Q. By what right did he succeed to it?

A. As the present juncture of affairs requir'd a person of experience to manage them, and King *Edmund's* sons

sons were very young, he was elected by the unanimous consent of the clergy and nobility.

Q. When did he begin his reign?

A. Anno 948.

Q. Did *Edred* enjoy peace after having reduced the *Northumbrian Danes*?

A. Yes; and this peace gave him an opportunity of devoting himself to a life of piety, by following the counsel of *Dunstan*, abbot of *Glastenbury*, who had a prodigious ascendant over him; insomuch that he would sometimes humble himself so low as to suffer himself to be scourged by him.

Q. To what did he chiefly apply himself during his reign?

A. In building churches and monasteries (particularly that of *Glaston*) which he endowed with rich revenues.

Q. In what year did he die?

A. In 955, after having reigned seven years.

Q. Did he leave no children?

A. Yes; two, *Elfrid* and *Bedfrid*, who were very young and did not succeed him.

Q. Where was he interr'd?

A. In the old minster without the city of *Winchester*. His bones, with those of other monarchs, are to this day preserv'd in a gilt coffin, fix'd in the wall on the south side of the choir.

EDWY, XIth King of England.

From 955 to 959.

Pope.

Emperor of the East.

JOHN XII.

955 CONSTAN. PORPH. 912

Emperor of the West.

King of France.

OTHO I.

936 LOTHARIUS I. 954

Q. WHO succeeded *Edred*?

A. *Edwy* his nephew, and eldest son of *Edmund* and Queen *Elgiva* his wife.

Q. When

Q. When did he begin his reign?

A. Anno 955. being then but fourteen years of age.

Q. What do historians say of this prince?

A. That he hated the monks, which was a very great crime in that age. He ejected them from their benefices, and gave them to laymen. This pretended prosecution made the monks make most bitter complaints against him. *Dunstan* was banished the kingdom, and fled for refuge to a monastery in *Flanders*.

Q. Did the *English* suffer him to go on in his crimes?

A. The clergy made strong remonstrances to him, upon which he banish'd such among them as had discover'd the greatest zeal; and the laity, after having complain'd for some time, at last broke out into open rebellion.

Q. Who were those that first fomented the insurrection?

A. The *Mercians*.

Q. What did they?

A. They set up his brother *Edgar* in his stead, upon which *Edwy* was so deeply concerned at it, that he died with grief.

Q. In what year did he die?

A. In 959, being the fifth of his reign; some historians relate that he was depos'd.

EDGAR

EDGAR, XIIth King of England.

From 959 to 975.

Popes.		Emperors of the East.	
JOHN XII.	953	ROMANUS the younger	959
BENEDICT V.	964	NICEPHORUS	963
JOHN XIII.	965	JOHN TRIMEZES	969
DOMNUS II.	972		
BENEDICT VI.	972	King of France.	
Emperor of the West.		LOTHARIUS I.	959
OTHO II.	953		

Q. IN what manner was *Edgar* raised to the throne?
 A. The *Mercians* having rebell'd against *Edwy*, set the crown on *Edgar's* head in 959, he being sixteen years of age.

Q. What memorable things are related of this prince?

A. That he made his subjects enjoy a perpetual peace, which gain'd him the name of *Pacifick*. But 'twas not an effeminate indolence obtain'd him this uninterrupted tranquillity, he having always an army on foot in the *North*; so that without drawing the sword, he forc'd the King of *Wales*, of *Ireland*, and of the *Isle of Man*, to take an oath of fidelity to him, and to recognize him for their sovereign.

Q. What actions did he perform in the beginning of his reign?

A. He punish'd such magistrates as had suffered themselves to be corrupted by money; and chang'd the tribute of specie and cattle, which the *Welsh* paid him annually, to 300 heads of wolves; this was in 961. Recall'd those who had been sent into banishment, and, among the rest, *Dunstan*, who was made archbishop of *Canterbury*: a very learned man, and one that had a great taste and love for the sciences: He pardon'd several criminals who had been condemned to die.

Q. Upon

Q. Upon what condition?

A. That they should bring him a certain number of wolves tongues, in proportion to the enormity of their crimes. He deprived all those of the title of King to whom his predecessors had granted it, but left them the possession of their territories, upon condition that they should do him homage for them, and pay their usual tribute.

Q. What did he in favour of the church?

A. Pope *John XIII.* gave leave for the assembling a national council in his dominions, in order to reform the secular clergy, who at that time led very dissolute lives. In it many were depos'd, and great numbers of monks drove from their monasteries; but these occasion'd great disorders in the ensuing reign.

Q. Had he any children?

A. Yes; by his first wife, a nun, whom he carried off from her convent, he had a daughter, *Editha* by name, whose holiness is greatly applauded: by his second wife, *Elfleda the fair*, he had a son call'd *Edward*, who succeeded him: and by his third wife, (the beautiful *Elfrida*) he had a son, *Ethelred* by name, who succeeded *Edward II.* He had murdered *Elfrida's* husband.

Q. In what manner was this done?

A. *Elfrida* was daughter to *Ordgar*, earl of *Devonshire*, and was reputed to be the greatest beauty in the kingdom: *Edgar* being a widower, was desirous of marrying her; and to prevent his being impos'd upon, he sent *Ethelwold* his favourite, to see whether her charms answer'd the great character that was given of them; if so, to demand her in marriage of the earl her father.

Q. Did *Ethelwold* execute his commission faithfully?

A. Struck with the lustre of *Elfrida's* beauty, he demanded her for himself; and in order to obtain the King's consent, he gave him a very unfaithful description of her charms; and afterwards desir'd his leave to marry her for the sake of her fortune, which amounted to a vast sum; cunningly insinuating to him, that as the little beauty she was mistress of, render'd her unworthy

worthy of a great King, her great possessions would make the fortune of a private man.

Q. Did the King acquiesce with his desires?

A. He lov'd him too well to oppose them; accordingly *Ethelwold* married the princess; and to hide, as he pretended, her deformity from the eyes of the court, he confin'd her in a castle, whence he would never suffer her to stir out.

Q. Was it possible for him to conceal her long?

A. No, for the King appointing a day of hunting in *Harewood*, which was only a blind, he went to the castle, saw *Elfrida*, and was so enchanted with her beauty, that he resolv'd immediately to revenge himself of *Ethelwold*. Some time after, he was found dead in the midst of a wood; and 'twas not doubted but this had been perpetrated by the King's order, since he marry'd his widow. *Elfrida*, to expiate her husband's death, tho' she had no hand in it, erected over the place where his blood was spilt, a monastery of nuns to sing over him.

Q. When did King *Edgar* die?

A. The 8th of *July*, 975, after having reigned sixteen years, and at thirty two years of age.

EDWARD II. XIIIth King of England.

From 975 to 979.

Popes.		Emperor of the East.	
BENEDICT VII.	975	BASILIIUS II.	975
Emperor of the West.		King of France.	
OTHO II.	973	LOTHARIUS I.	974

Q. WHICH of *Edgar*'s sons succeeded him?

A. *Edward* II. whom his Queen *Elfe*'s brought him. He began his reign in 975.

Q. Who declar'd for *Edward*?

A. *Dunstan* and all the bishops: another party was for *Ethelred* his brother; but *Dunstan* crown'd the young prince

prince *Edward*, who was twelve years of age, without valuing the opposition made by the other party.

Q. Did he enjoy a peaceable reign?

A. No, for the loose ecclesiasticks, who had been degraded in his father's time, finding it impossible to get themselves restor'd in his reign, because they still continued the same irregular courses, rais'd great commotions in the kingdom.

Q. By whom were they fomented?

A. By the Queen his step-mother, and the earl of *Mercia*; who caballing together, form'd so strong a party, as quite overpower'd King *Edward*.

Q. In what manner did he die?

A. Being one day hunting in a forest, he happened to stray from his attendants; and wandering up and down, he at last arriv'd at a country seat of his step-mother's, *Elfrida*, call'd *Corvesgate*, or *Corf-castle* in the island of *Purbeck*, according to *Camden*. This cruel princess, who saw him coming at a distance, order'd one of her servants to kill him; and the better to effect it, she ran out to meet him with a smiling countenance. The King telling her that he was a-thirst, she commanded some wine to be brought to him; and just as he was beginning to drink, this wicked wretch gave him two deep wounds in the body with a dagger.

Q. Did *Edward* die upon the spot?

A. He would have fled, but falling from his horse, the abovementioned assassin immediately dispatch'd him; or according to others, finding himself wounded, he clapt spurs to his horse, and rode away, but fainting, thro' much loss of blood, he fell from his horse, and one foot hanging in the stirrup, he was dragged up and down the fields and woods, till in the end his body was found dead near the house of a poor blind woman, by the persons whom *Elfrida* had sent after him.

Q. When did this sad catastrophe happen?

A. The 18th of *March*, 978, in the third year of his reign. He was canonized some time after, and rank'd among the martyrs. 'Tis pretended that many miracles were wrought at his grave.

ETHELRED II. XIVth King of England.

From 979 to 1016.

Popes.

BENEDICT VII.	975
JOHN XV.	984
JOHN XVI.	985
GREGORY V.	996
SILVESTER II.	999
JOHN XVII.	1003
JOHN XVIII.	1003
SERGIUS VI.	1009
BENEDICT VIII.	1012

Emperor of the East.

BASIL II.	975
-----------	-----

Emperors of the West.

OTHO II.	973
OTHO III.	983
HENRY II.	1002
King of France.	
LOTHARIUS I.	954
LEWIS V.	986
HUGH CAPET	987
ROBERT I.	997

2. **W**HO succeeded *Edward the Younger*?

A. His brother *Ethelred*; he began to reign in 979, at twelve years of age. He was son of the beautiful *Elfrida*.

2. What is related of him?

A. That he was of a very fearful nature, and extravagantly indolent. That he was extremely avaricious, not to mention a great many more ill qualities.

2. Did nothing particular happen at his coronation?

A. 'Tis pretended that as *Dunstan* was setting the crown upon his head, he told him as by a prophetick spirit, that the crime which his infamous mother had perpetrated, and the guilt of those who had advis'd her to murder King *Edward*, could never be expiated but by an abundant effusion of the blood of his unhappy subjects.

2. Was this prophecy fulfill'd?

A. The *English* being resolv'd not to submit to *Ethelred's* tyranny, took up arms against him; and he likewise made *Sweyn* King of *Denmark* his enemy.

2. In what manner?

A. By

A. By a secret and horrid commission he caus'd all the *Danes*, who had settled themselves in *England* under the preceding reigns, to be massacred.

Q. Did this inhuman barbarity continue long unpunish'd?

A. No; for immediately after, *Sweyn* invaded *England* at the head of a powerful army; defeated that of *Ethelred*, and laid siege to the city of *Exeter*. *Ethelred*, by the advice of his nobles, gave *Sweyn* 48,000 pounds to leave *England*, who thereupon sail'd away with all his booty.

Q. Did he not return?

A. A little after, with a stronger and more numerous army, with which he conquer'd *England*; forced *Ethelred* to fly for refuge to the court of *Richard* duke of *Normandy*, whose sister *Emma* he had married.

Q. Did he continue long there?

A. Till the death of *Sweyn*, viz. the third of *January*, 1015, which he no sooner heard of, than he return'd back into *England*. *Canute* or *Cnute*, son of *Sweyn*, took the field against him, but was forced to fly to his ships.

Q. Did not *Cnute* return again?

A. A very little after; and as *Ethelred*, during his absence had devoted himself intirely to pleasure, *Cnute* found no one to oppose his descent, or stop the progress of his conquests till the beginning of the year 1016, when *Edmund*, eldest son of *Ethelred*, marched against him with a body of forces, and would have oblig'd him to cross the seas again, had he not been betray'd by the counsels of the treacherous *Edric*, who join'd with *Edmund* with no other view than to betray him: his presence being required in another part of the kingdom, because of his father's death.

Q. When did this happen?

A. The 23^d of *April*, 1016, aged 50 years, after he had reign'd thirty seven.

Q. Did he leave any issue?

A. By *Elgiua* his first wife, he had *Edmund* who succeeded him, *Athelstan* who died an infant, another son named *Edwy*, and three daughters; the eldest, call'd *Ed-*

giva, was married to an *English* earl, who lost his life in a battle; the second, call'd *Edgith*, had the ill-fortune to be married to the treacherous *Edric* duke of *Mercia*; and the youngest named *Edgina*, was married to *Uthred* earl of *Northumberland*. By *Emma* of *Normandy*, his second wife, *Ethelred* had *Alfred* and *Edward*, and a daughter named *Goda*, who was first married to *Gautier* earl of *Mantes*, and afterwards to *Eustachius* earl of *Boulogne*.

EDMUND, surnam'd *Ironside*, XVth. King of England.

From 1016 to 1017.

Pope.

Emperor of the West.

BENEDICT VIII. 1012 HENRY II. 1001

Emperor of the East.

King of France.

BASIL II. 975 ROBERT I. 997

2. WHO succeeded *Ethelred*?

A. *Edmund II.* his eldest son, he began his reign anno 1016, and was surnam'd *Ironside*.

2. Why so?

A. Because of his extraordinary strength. He was one of the greatest captains of his age, but had the ill fortune to be oppos'd by a powerful enemy.

2. By whom?

A. By *Cnute*, King of *Denmark* and son to *Sweyn*, who possess'd the greatest part of *England* when *Edmund* came to the crown. *Cnute* went and laid siege to *London*, which was almost the only city that had not submitted to his arms.

2. Did he take it?

A. No; for *Edmund* gaining two compleat victories over him, forced him to raise the siege. A little after he beat him a third time, but not making his advantage of these successes, and being impos'd upon by the counsels of *Edric*, who had reconciled himself to him only with intention to betray him; *Cnute* defeated him in his turn;

turn; and brought his affairs to so low an ebb; that those who had hitherto adher'd faithfully to him, abandon'd him and submitted to the conqueror.

Q. What course did *Edmund* take in this unhappy juncture?

A. He got together those who still continu'd faithful to him, and advanc'd in order to fight the enemy; when, perceiving *Cnut* at the head of his forces, he rode off from his own; upon which, *Cnut* advancing forward, a furious combat ensued: but as neither of them had the advantage, they immediately ended their dispute by agreeing to divide the kingdom between them.

Q. In what manner was this division made?

A. *Cnut* had for his share the kingdom of *Mercia*, and *Northumberland*; and *Edmund* all the country south of the *Thames*, with *London*, *Essex*, and *East-Anglia*, which he enjoy'd but a few days.

Q. How so?

A. *Edric*, his brother-in-law, caused him to be assassinated by two of his domesticks. Some say he made his own son commit this infamous action. Thus died this brave prince. *Edric*, who congratulated himself for the great service he had done *Cnut*, ran in order to acquaint him first with the news of it. *Cnut* was struck with horror at so barbarous an action. He nevertheless dissembled, because he thought he still wanted the traitor; and he even promis'd to raise him above all the other lords of the kingdom. He afterwards was as good as his word, but in a very different manner from what that perfidious wretch had expected; for he had his head cut off, and fixed upon one of the highest gates in *London*.

Q. When did the death of *Edmund* happen?

A. In 1017, after having reign'd almost one year; but during so short a reign, he had given frequent testimonies of the most exalted valour, the most consummate prudence, and the utmost goodness.

DANISH KINGS.

CANUTE I. or CNUTE, XVIth King of England.

From the Year 1017, to 1036.

<i>Popes.</i>		<i>Emperors of the West.</i>	
BENEDICT VIII.	1012	HENRY II.	1002
JOHN XIX.	1024	CONRAD II.	1024
BENEDICT IX.	1033		
<i>Emperors of the East.</i>		<i>Kings of France.</i>	
BASIL II.	975	ROBERT I.	997
CONSTAN. X.	1025	HENRY I.	1031
ROMANUS III.	1028		
MICHAEL VI.	1034		

Q. IS not *Sweyn*, properly, the first *Danish* King of *England*?

A. Yes; but the shortness of his reign, and, possibly, his not being crown'd, might be the reason why most historians have not rank'd this prince in the catalogue of the Kings of *England*.

Q. Who succeeded *Edmund*?

A. *Canute*, who was elected anno 1017.

Q. What was the consequence of this election?

A. It put an end to the war which had continu'd upwards of two hundred years, and cost the two nations more than three hundred thousand men, kill'd in fifty-four land, and thirty-eight sea fights; not to mention a numberless multitude of skirmishes and sieges.

Q. What is the character of *Cnute*?

A. That he was a great King, and justly merited that glorious title, if we have regard only to the latter part of his reign. The latter part of his life was quite different

rent from the beginning, for he became humble, modest, just, and truly religious.

Q. With what temper did he govern the *English*?

A. His native sweetness and moderation won him entirely the hearts of the *English*: he promoted every thing which he thought was agreeable to them; put them into the highest offices of trust, and even entrusted them with the command of his armies which he employ'd against the Kings of *Scotland* and *Norway*.

Q. Did not he embellish the kingdom by various works?

A. He caus'd the cities, the abbeyes and churches to be rebuilt, and lessen'd the taxes which the former monarchs had been obliged to levy, in order to carry on their wars.

Q. Had he no wars to maintain?

A. He vanquish'd the King of *Scotland*, who had made an inroad into *England*, and oblig'd him to become his tributary. He conquer'd *Norway*, whose King had also infested *Denmark*.

Q. What evil actions do some relate of him?

A. That he sent *Edmund* and *Edward*, sons of the late King *Edmund*, as also *Edwy*, son to *Ethelred* II. to be basely murder'd; but by providence they were all preserv'd.

Q. In what manner did he endeavour to atone for his crime?

A. Among many other things, he built a splendid church over the tomb of *Edmund* King of *East-Anglia*, who had been kill'd by the *Danes*; and gave the name of *St. Edmund's-bury* to the town (which he enlarg'd) wherein that church was situated.

Q. Did he not give some illustrious testimony of his piety?

A. Standing one day on the sea-shore, one of his courtiers said to him, that he was King of both earth and sea; upon which, sitting down on the strand, when the tide was coming in, he spake to the sea as follows, O sea, thou art subject to me, and this land belongs to me; I command thee not to advance towards the side on which I stand: nor come and wet the feet of thy master: but as the sea, notwithstanding his orders, rose still higher, and came up to the place where he sat, and even beyond it, he turn'd himself to the flatterer.

Q. And

Q. And what did he say to him?

A. Let us, said he, *confess that there is no sovereign to whom the title of King of heaven and earth belongs, but he, who created them by his almighty power, and preserves them by his goodness. Let us therefore go and acknowledge him for such.*

Q. What did he for this purpose?

A. He immediately went to the abbey-church of St. Peter's at Winchester, took his diadem from his head, and with it crown'd a crucifix, and could never afterwards be prevail'd upon to put it again on his head, but confess'd himself unworthy of it.

Q. Did he always continue in this pious resolution?

A. To the end of his life, which happen'd the twelfth of November, 1036, after having reign'd nineteen years.

Q. Was he married?

A. Yes, and he left three sons, all of an age fit for reigning, among whom he divided his three kingdoms by his will. To Sweyn the eldest, who was not legitimate, he gave Norway for his share: he gave England to the second call'd Harold, born of the same lady: and to Canute or Hardicnute, whom Emma of Normandy brought him, the kingdom of Denmark: Gunilda, who also sprung from the latter, was married to the emperor Henry IV.

HAROLD I. or HAREFOOT, XVIIth King of England.

From 1036 to 1039.

Pope.		Emperor of the West.	
BENEDICT IX.	1033	CONRAD II.	1034
	Emperor of the East.	[King of France.	
MICHAEL IV.	1034	HENRY I.	1031

Q. DID Harold meet with no opposition on his coming to the crown?

A. Most of the great men of the kingdom would have preferr'd Hardicnute to him; but as the last will of the

the King his father was in his favour, and that he had a great number of friends, he carried it.

Q. What is said of this prince?

A. That he died without posterity, and without having done one memorable action. His impiety and injustice; his scandalous dissoluteness and mean spirit, had made him so odious to his subjects, that he was going to be deposed, when death deliver'd the kingdom of him.

Q. When did he die?

A. In 1039, being the third year of his reign. He died in winter, and this was the sharpest one that had ever been felt in *England*.

CANUTE II. or HARDICNUTE, XVIIth King of *England*.

From 1039 to 1041.

Pope.

Emperor of the West.

BENEDICT IX.

1033

HENRY III.

1039

Emperors of the East.

King of France.

MICHAEL V.

1041

HENRY I.

1031

CONSTAN. MONOM. 1042

Q. BY whom was *Harold* succeeded?

A. By *Cnute* or *Hardicnute* his brother.

Q. What was he before?

A. King of *Denmark*, his father having left him that kingdom by his will, as was before observ'd.

Q. When did he begin his reign?

A. In 1039. His qualities resembled those of his brother, to which he added cruelty.

Q. In what manner did the *English* receive him upon his accession?

A. With great testimonies of joy, submission, and respect. However he was very ungrateful for the affection they had shew'd him, since he impos'd an exorbitant tax on his subjects: the *English* were greatly disgusted at it, and the inhabitants of *Worcester* murdered

two.

two of the men appointed to levy that tax. The King sent *Goodwin* duke of *Wessex*, and two other noblemen, against that city, and these burnt the city (but with great reluctance) to ashes.

Q. Give me an instance of his cruelty?

A. He sullied the beginning of his reign with a most horrid and unjust act, by causing the body of the late King his brother to be taken out of his grave, and commanded it to be thrown into the *Thames*; which a Fisherman finding, he brought it to the *Danes*, who buried it in the church of *St. Clement's Danes*.

Q. In what manner did he die?

A. Either by excess of drinking in a great banquet at *Lambeth*, by sudden death, or a strong poison; be this as it will, 'tis certain he fell under the table, and died upon the spot. His cruelty and gluttony, which were excessive, incurr'd him so much hatred, that no enquiry was made into the manner of his death. All historians agree, that he spent his days and nights in riotous eating and drinking. Nevertheless, one of them applauds him highly for keeping open table four times a day; and bewails the avarice of his successors, for abolishing so laudable a custom.

Q. What year did he die?

A. In 1041, in the third year of his reign.

BRITISH KINGS.

EDWARD, *surnam'd the Confessor:*
 XIXth King of England.

From 1041 to 1065.

Popes.

BENEDICT IX.	1033	THEODORA	1054
GREGORY VI.	1044	MICHAEL VI.	1056
CLEMENT II.	1046	ISAAC I.	1057
DAMASUS II.	1048	CONSTANS XII.	1059
S. LEO IX.	1049	<i>Emperors of the West.</i>	
VICTOR II.	1055	HENRY III.	1039
STEPHEN X.	1057	HENRY IV.	1056
NICHOLAS II.	1059	<i>Kings of France.</i>	
ALEXANDER II.	1061		

Emperors of the East.

		HENRY I.	1031
CONST. MONOM.	1042	PHILIP I.	1060

2. DID *Hardicnute* leave any issue?

A. No; at least none who succeeded him, for his crimes and those of his brother, had made the government of the *Danes* so odious to the *English*, that the chief men of the kingdom met together, and made a law against the *Danes*.

2. What was the import of it?

A. That hereafter it should not be lawful to bestow the crown upon any person of that nation; and that whoever should dare so much as to propose it, should be looked upon as an enemy to his country, a traitor to the state, and guilty of high treason.

2. Did the *English* stop here?

A. No, they cut to pieces all the *Danes* they could find in *England*, and very few of them escaped. But
 Mr.

Mr. *Rapin* doubts very much the truth of this story; he observes, that 'tis one of the most knotty passages in all the history of *England*; and that in what light soever we consider it, such difficulties arise as are insurmountable.

Q. Whom did they elect King?

A. *Edward*, and that by the intrigues of *Goodwin*, who made him promise, with an oath, that he would marry *Editha* his daughter; to which condition *Edward* consented, notwithstanding the reluctance he had, to marry the daughter of a man, whom he look'd upon as the murderer of *Alfred* his brother. He cross'd the sea in the beginning of the year 1041, and was crown'd at *Winchester* by *Edfine* archbishop of *Canterbury* on *Easter-day*, being about forty years of age.

Q. What memorable action happen'd in his reign?

A. *Sweyn*, King of *Norway*, and son to *Canute the great*, intended to assert his right to the crown of *England*, but was prevented by the war, which he was oblig'd to sustain against the King of *Denmark*.

Q. Were not *Goodwin* and his son banish'd?

A. Yes; for having refus'd to obey the King, who, not being able to put up the affront, took his measures so well, that they found themselves on a sudden abandon'd by their chief partizans, and were forc'd to obey the sentence. Some time after he was recall'd by the King, who restor'd him to his employments, as well as his sons.

Q. What do some historians relate concerning his death?

A. That being one day at dinner with the King, this monarch said to him, that, had his brother been living, they would have mutually assisted each other, and as he spoke, he look'd upon the earl with a very disdainful air.

Q. What did the earl say to this?

A. As he knew that the King suspected his being guilty of his brother's death, taking a bit of bread in his hand, he said, *May this be the last morsel I ever swallow, if I am guilty of your brother's death*; and immediately put it into his mouth.

Q. What follow'd after this?

A. It choak'd him, and left those who were present in an uncertainty, whether it were owing to any sudden transport, or a judgment from heaven; however, this incident is not taken notice of by the best historians.

Q. Have we no instance of *Edward's* severity?

A. He seiz'd upon the treasures of *Queen Emma*, his mother, which she had in *Winchester*; and without shewing her the least regard, stript her of all her possessions, and left her only a small pension for her subsistence. Several historians assert that he also accus'd her of being engaged in an infamous commerce with *Alwin*, bishop of *Winchester*, and that she was obliged to submit to the *Ordeal*, or fiery trial.

Q. In what manner was this perform'd?

A. Nine plough-shares red-hot, were laid at unequal distances, over which the criminal was oblig'd to pass blindfold and barefooted, when, if she came off unhurt, she was judged to be innocent; if otherwise, guilty.

Q. Did she come off with honour?

A. Yes, and pass'd thro' them untouch'd, to the great astonishment of all the spectators.

Q. Did *Edward* gain any conquests over his enemies?

A. He repuls'd the *Danes*, who had made a descent at *Sandwich*. *Siward* earl of *Northumberland*, one of his generals, routed the *Scots*, and kill'd their King *Macbeth*. *Alfgar*, an *English* nobleman, and *Griffin* King of *Wales*, made an inroad into *England*, took and plunder'd *Hereford*; but they were totally routed by *Harold* son of earl *Goodwin*, who, of his own accord, had rais'd an army in the provinces under his command. In a word, *Edward* defeated, either in person, or by his generals, all those who dar'd to attack him.

Q. What did *Edward* do for the better government of his kingdom?

A. He collected the laws made by his predecessors. viz. from those of the *Danes*, *Saxons*, and *Mercians*, and of them made one body; taking all such as were most favourable to his subjects, and gave orders for their be-

ing duly executed; and 'tis in these laws or privileges, that the happiness of the *English* consists, and distinguishes them from all other nations in *Europe*.

Q. By what names are these laws intituled?

A. The laws of *Edward*. These were thrown aside under the reign of *William* the conqueror, who suppress'd the original thereof, and all such copies as could be met with.

Q. What do other historians say concerning this?

A. That the written laws might have their original from the abovemention'd compilation, but the common law, which arose from custom, they affirm to be of greater antiquity.

Q. Did this suppress them?

A. Some few copies escaped, and certain fragments were found, which King *Henry I.* caused to be interwoven in what is call'd the *Magna Charta*, of which we shall make frequent mention in the sequel; and remitted that ignominious tax call'd *Dane-gelt*, imposed by *Hardicnute*, and which for forty years past had amounted to 40,000*l.* a year.

Q. What were the qualities of *Edward*?

A. The church honour'd him as a great saint, and some *Romish* writers relate, that God wrought a great number of miracles by his means during his life-time, and by his prayers after his death; that he observ'd an inviolable chastity with *Editha* his consort, tho' others say, that the reason why he did not converse with her as a wife, was because of the displeasure he had taken against earl *Goodwin* her father. King *Edward* was in general, of a mild and peaceable temper. He was a charitable prince, and employ'd those sums in alms, which other Kings squander away in their pleasures. In a word, he was neither remarkably good or bad, and had very little genius.

Q. What other remarkable particulars do the above-nam'd *Romish* historians say of him?

A. That by his touch, he cur'd the disease which now goes by the name of the *King's Evil*; but how far imagination might influence these cures, I shall not take upon me to determine.

Q. What

Q. What considerable buildings did he erect?

A. Of a little monastery he made a most beautiful abbey-church call'd *Westminster*, where he provided his own sepulchre, which has since been made use of as the burial-place of the *English* monarchs; and another church dedicated to *St. Margaret*, standing without the abbey, and endow'd the former with very rich revenues. He also founded the college of *St. Mary Ottery* in *Devonshire*, and remov'd the bishop's see from *Credington* to *Exeter*.

Q. When did he die?

A. *January 5, 1065*, in the room of his palace at *Westminster*, now call'd the painted chamber, and was buried in *Westminster-abbey*. He reign'd twenty four years. *Edward* was the last King of *Egbert's* race, but not the last *Saxon* King, as some have advanc'd, since his successor was of the same country.

HAROLD II. XXth King of England.

From 1065 to 1066.

Pope.		Emperor of the West.	
ALEXANDER II.	1061	HENRY IV.	1056
Emperor of the East.		King of France.	
CONSTANS XII.	1059	PHILIP I.	1060

Q. WHO succeeded *Edward the Confessor*?

A. Some authors pretend, that he had declar'd *William* the bastard, duke of *Normandy*, his heir; but the aversion which the *English* had for a foreign servitude, made them oppose his will.

Q. What did they do in this case?

A. If the nobles who were assembled to name a successor to *Edward*, had had a regard to justice only, to equity, and the ancient usages of the kingdom, they would not have long debated, on whom the crown should devolve: *Edgar Atheling* was the only prince of the blood

of their ancient monarchs, and consequently was the only one who had a right claim to it. But *Harold* had managed his matters so well, that he was elected by unanimous consent, without any one's deigning to debate upon the rights of the lawful heir.

Q. How did *William* behave?

A. He sent ambassadors to *Harold*, to cite him to resign his crown to him, and, in case of refusal, to reproach him with violating his oath, and declare war against him.

Q. What answer did *Harold* make?

A. That he was able to defend his rights, against any one who should dispute them with him.

Q. Did *William* stop here, after having sent this embassy?

A. No: *Toston*, King *Harold's* brother, but his sworn enemy, had married his wife's sister, who was daughter to *Baldwin* earl of *Flanders*; *William* prevail'd with him to take up arms, by which he might be enable to dispute the crown with his brother: and accordingly the earl of *Flanders* having assisted him with a body of forces, he crossed into *England*, but was defeated.

Q. What did *Toston* do after this ill success?

A. He went first into *Scotland*, and afterwards to *Norway*, where he propos'd to *Harold*, surnam'd *Harfager*, the conquest of *England*, which, according to the account he gave of matters, might be very easily effected: upon which *Harfager* embark'd his army on board a fleet of 500 sail of ships, came into *England*, and took *York*; but notwithstanding the advantageous situation of his camp, he nevertheless lost the battle and his life, and *Toston* was also kill'd.

Q. Was *William* dishearten'd at these victories?

A. No; he equipp'd a strong fleet, and reinforcing his army with several bodies of soldiers that were sent him by the neighbouring princes, he cross'd into *England*.

Q. Where did he land?

A. At *Pevensey* in *Sussex*, on the 29th of *September*, and advancing towards *Hastings*, (where he built a second fort) he there encounter'd *Harold*. Here was fought the

the great battle between the *English* and *Norman* nations ; a battle the most memorable of all others ; and though miserably lost, was yet fought with the utmost bravery by the *English* : the many wounds which *Harold* receiv'd, who lost his life and his crown in it ; and the slaughter of a prodigious number of his *English* soldiers, manifestly shew, how gloriously they exerted themselves, in order to save their country from the calamity of a foreign servitude.

Q. What reasons did he give for his descent upon *England* ?

A. Three. I. To revenge the death of prince *Alfred*, brother to King *Edward*. II. To restore *Roberts*, archbishop of *Canterbury* to his see. III. To offer his assistance to the *English*, to punish *Harold* for his usurpation. But all these reasons were very frivolous.

Q. What do historians say contributed to facilitate this victory to the *Normans* ?

A. The continual peace which the *English* had enjoy'd for fifty years, after they had freed themselves from their former enemies the *Danes*, which had made them neglect the military arts, and abandon themselves to luxury and idleness ; add to this, the licentiousness of the clergy, the effeminacy, gluttony, and oppression of the nobility, and the drunkenness and disorder of the common people.

Q. What do others relate ?

A. That it was owing to *Harold* himself, who grown insolent upon his success at *Stamford*, had kept the plunder of the field, and not distributed any of it among his soldiers, which made them discontented and unruly, and by that means occasion'd the loss of the battle ; not to mention, that the *Normans* had a peculiar way of fighting, with long bows, which the *English* being strangers to, did therefore tend very much to their disadvantage. And yet their own historians relate, that the main battle of the *English*, consisting of bills, their ancient weapons, kept so close together in one body, that no force could break them, till the *Normans*, pretending to fly, drew them into disorder, and by that means won the battle.

Q. Was King *Harold's* body found?

A. Yes, after long search among the dead, (and those of his two brothers, *Gurth* and *Lewin*) and was buried in *Waltham-abbey*, which himself had founded.

Q. Did he leave any children behind him?

A. By his first wife, whose name is not known, he had *Goodwin*, *Edmund*, and *Magnus*. By the second, call'd *Alghitha*, sister of *Morcar* and *Edwin*, he had a son, *Wolf* by name, who was knighted by *William Rufus*; and two daughters, the first, call'd *Gunilda*, grew blind, and spent her days in a convent. The second married *Waldemar*, king of *Russia*, by whom she had a daughter, who married *Waldemar* king of *Denmark*.

NORMAN KINGS.

WILLIAM, surnam'd the Conqueror,
XXIst King of England, and Duke of
Normandy.

From 1066 to 1087.

Popes.

ALEXANDER II.	1061	NICEPHORUS I.	1078
GREGORY VII.	1073	ALEXIS I.	1081
VICTOR III.	1086		

Emperor of the West.

Emperors of the East.		HENRY IV.	1056
CONSTANT. XII.	1059		
ROMANUS IV.	1068	King of France.	
MICHAEL VII.	1071	PHILIP I.	1060

Q. Whose son was *William*?

A. Of *Robert* duke of *Normandy* and one of his mistresses nam'd *Harlotte*, (whence some imagine the word

word *harlot* deriv'd) a skinner's daughter of *Falaixe*; which gave occasion to his being surnam'd the *Bastard*, but he afterwards chang'd it into that of *Conqueror*, by the conquest of *England*.

Q. Pray give some account of this amour.

A. As he was one day riding to take the air, he happen'd to pass by a company of rural damsels who were dancing, when he was so taken with the graceful carriage of one of them (the above-mention'd *Harlotte*) that he prevail'd with her to cohabit with him, which she did, and ten months after she was deliver'd of *William*.

Q. Did he succeed to the dominions of his father?

A. Yes; *Robert* was very fond of him; and 'tis related, that the child a moment after his birth, having found some straw under his hand, he gather'd up certain blades of it, and grasp'd them so hard, that they were oblig'd to use some violence, before they could be forc'd out of his hands. So that upon his going to set out for the wars in the *Holy-land*, he caus'd *William* to be recogniz'd his heir.

Q. To whose care did he recommend him?

A. To that of *Henry I.* King of *France*, who took care of his education, protected and defended him against his rebellious subjects, and certain great men, who imagin'd they might justly lay claim to his dukedom. But some years after, *William* carried on a successful war against *Henry*.

Q. In what year was *William the Conqueror* born?

A. In 1026, and his father caus'd him to be acknowledged his successor to the dukedom of *Normandy* in 1033, it being the Custom in those days to dispose of kingdoms by donation or will.

Q. When did he succeed him?

A. In the month of *June*, 1035, being but nine years of age; and his success in the battle of *Hastings* gave him the crown of *England*, the 14th of *October* anno 1066.

Q. Pray describe the person and qualities of this conqueror.

A. He

A. He was tall, thick-set, and big, and his corpulency was troublesome to him in his latter years. He was so vigorous, that historians declare, no one could bend his bow but himself. Laborious, season'd to all the hardships of war, patient of heat and cold, hunger and thirst; had a great soul, an elevated mind, and a prodigious genius, which suffer'd nothing to escape its researches; he delighted in war, understood it well, and had great success in it. When once he was rais'd to anger, it was impossible to appease him. This the *English* found to their cost; for *William* wearied out with their insurrections, treated them with so heavy a hand, as almost merited the name of tyranny.

Q. How was this?

A. At first he treated the *English* with great lenity, and confirm'd their laws and privileges. But when he found them plotting year after year to dethrone him, then he alter'd his conduct: for he punish'd the mutineers without mercy, and stripping them of their possessions, bestow'd them on *Normans*, and such of the *English* as had been faithful to him; deprived as far as he could the *English* nation of its privileges, abolish'd its laws, and establish'd those of *Normandy* in their room; tho' others extol his clemency, from his receiving into favour *Edgar Atheling*, who had made several insurrections.

Q. What did he do still further?

A. He seiz'd upon the treasures belonging to the monasteries, under pretence that the rebels had concealed their most valuable effects there; deprived the *English* of all places of trust and profit; imposed the tenure of knight's service upon all lands held of the crown; caused a survey to be taken of his own lands and demesnes, and of whatever was held by his tenants *in capite*, which was set down in a book call'd *Domesday-book*; and laid a tax of six shillings upon every hide of land, answerable to the tax call'd *Dane-gelt*, which *Edward* had abolish'd, and which recall'd to their remembrance the evils they had suffer'd under a foreign yoke.

Q. What did he afterwards prohibit them?

A. To

A. To hunt, or fell timber in his forests, without his exprefs leave first obtain'd for that purpose. He likewise commanded them to use the *Norman* tongue only, in their law proceedings; caused the laws of the land, and the statutes of the *English* Kings to be translated into that language; and ordered it to be taught in all schools. In a word, he govern'd *England* like a conquer'd country, insomuch that no sovereign ever reign'd with more despotic sway. Some modern writers affirm, that King *William* appointed the *Corfeu*, but there is no authority for that, neither is it mention'd by any contemporary Historian. See *Rapin*, fol. vol. I. p. 171. note (1)

②. Let us, if you please, return to the battle of *Hastings*; what were the consequences of it?

A. The *English*, after the loss of this battle, were for raising a new body of forces, but *William* not giving them time sufficient for the doing of it, and marching towards *London* with great dispatch, he oblig'd the inhabitants thereof to send deputies to him; who accordingly came and brought him the keys of that city, altho' *Edwin* and *Morcar*, earls of *Northumberland* and *Mercia*, had endeavour'd to set up *Edgar Atheling*, the right heir to the crown; to which the rest of the nobility had consented, had they not found the bishops wavering.

②. Did he march up to it?

A. Yes; and *Stigand* archbishop of *Canterbury*, (according to some authors) having refused to recognize and crown him, tho' others say with more foundation, it was because of some defect in his investiture, the ceremony was perform'd at *Westminster*, by *Aldred* archbishop of *York*, on *Christmas* day anno 1066.

②. Did all *England* submit to his authority?

A. No; *York* and *Oxford* still held out, and he punish'd them with such great severity for their resistance, as terrify'd even the most obstinate; upon which they strove who should first submit to him.

②. Did this submission continue for any time?

A. Some noblemen went over into *Denmark*, and prevail'd with *Sweyn*, King of that country, to send his brother

brother

brother *Oſbern*, with a fleet of 200 ſhips into *England*; accordingly he came, took the city of *York*; but not long after, *William* defeated him, and the rebels were oblig'd to ſue to him for a pardon.

Q. Did he grant it them?

A. Yes; but their repeated infurrections afterwards, oblig'd him to go thoſe lengths I have already taken notice of; and from that time he conſider'd them as a people with whom clemency and gentleneſs would have no other effect, than to make them more rebellious.

Q. What other wars had he to maintain?

A. Several againſt the *Welſh* his neighbours, whom he defeated in various battles, and forced to pay him tribute. *Malcolm*, King of *Scots*, likewise attack'd him, but he oblig'd him to do him homage for the whole kingdom of *Scotland*. However, this is denied by the *Scotiſh* hiſtorians, who affirm, that it was only for the county of *Cumberland*. He alſo made war upon the duke of *Bretagne*, for his refuſing to pay homage to him.

Q. Had he no diſpute with *France*?

A. Exaſperated at *Philip* the firſt's having ſuccour'd *Dol*, to which he had laid ſiege, and for his having fomented the rebellion of *Robert* his eldeſt ſon, he enter'd *France* at the head of a powerful army; beſieged, took, and plunder'd *Mantes*, and at laſt ſet fire to it; but this cruel action coſt him his life.

Q. In what manner did this happen?

A. He went ſo near the flames, that the violence thereof, and the heat of the ſeaſon threw him into a fever, which, together with a bruife he receiv'd in the rim of his belly, oblig'd him to get himſelf convey'd in a litter to *Roan*, where he died the 9th of *September* 1087, being the ſixty-fiſt year of his age, and the twenty-fiſt of his reign.

Q. Where was he interr'd?

A. In *St. Stephen's* abbey in *Caen*, which he had erected in that city, and endow'd with rich revenues at his death.

Q. Was

Q. Was not he married?

A. He married *Maud* or *Mathilda*, daughter to *Baldwin V.* earl of *Flanders*.

Q. Had he any children by her?

A. Four sons, viz. *Robert*, *Richard*, *William*, and *Henry*; and five daughters, viz. *Cecily*, who was abbess of a monastery in *Caen*; *Constantia*, who married *Alain Fergeant*, duke of *Bretagne*; *Adeliza*, who had been promis'd to *Harold*, died in her infancy; *Adela* married *Stephen* earl of *Blois*; *Gundred* was the wife of *William Warren*, earl of *Surrey*; and *Agatha*, who espous'd *Alphonso*, King of *Gallicia*.

Q. In what manner did he divide his dominions among his sons?

A. To *Robert* the eldest he gave *Normandy*; *Richard* was kill'd by a deer in *New Forest*; to *William* he gave *England*; and prince *Henry* had but five thousand marks a year; and upon the complaint he made to his father of the ill provision that had been made for him, King *William* comforted him and promis'd him, as from a prophetick spirit, that the dominions of his brothers would be united in his person; which accordingly happen'd. But it is not very probable, that God would reveal himself intimately to such a prince as this.

WILLIAM

WILLIAM II. *surnam'd* RUFUS, XXII^d
King of England.

From 1087 to 1100.

Popes.		Emperor of the West.	
VICTOR III.	1086	HENRY IV.	1056
URBAN II.	1088		
PASCHAL II.	1099	Kings of France.	
Emperor of the East.		PHILIP I.	1060
ALEXIS I.	1081		

2. WHICH of King William's sons succeeded to the crown of England?

A. William II. *surnam'd* Rufus, his second son; Robert the eldest being excluded for having taken up arms against his father, had only Normandy for his portion.

2. Why had William the surname of Rufus?

A. From the colour of his hair.

2. What did this prince do to procure himself the crown?

A. He employ'd Lanfranc, and some other noblemen, to exert themselves in his favour; and they were so successful, that William was crown'd by Lanfranc, archbishop of Canterbury on Sunday the 27th of September anno 1087; but he was very much cross'd by his brother.

2. Did any thing remarkable happen?

A. Odo bishop of Bayeux, earl of Kent, his uncle, jealous of the favour shewn to Lanfranc, form'd a strong party in the kingdom, in order to set Robert duke of Normandy upon the throne; and this prelate had laid his scheme so well, that every one thought William was inevitably lost.

2. What extricated him out of this difficulty?

A. His own diligence; for he did not give the rebels time to join themselves in a body, but dispersed them intirely before Robert could come over into England.

2. Did

Q. Did not *William* afterwards revenge himself upon his brother ?

A. He enter'd *Normandy* at the head of a powerful army, and took several strong holds; but their common friends reconcil'd them in 1091, upon condition that which soever of the two should survive the other, should succeed to his dominions, in case he died without issue.

Q. Did a good harmony continue between them after this ?

A. No: *William* return'd into *Normandy*, and seiz'd upon several cities, but some time after *Robert* engaging himself in the crusade, and not having money sufficient for defraying the expences of his journey to the *Holy-Land*, he mortgaged the dukedom of *Normandy* to his brother *William* for ten thousand marks of silver; a very considerable sum in those days.

Q. Did *William* engage himself in any other wars ?

A. He obliged *Malcolm* King of *Scots*, to pay him the same homage he had paid to the King his father. Some time after, *William* slew *Malcolm* and his son in a battle.

Q. Had he not some enemies to encounter still more formidable ?

A. Yes; and these were the *Welsh*, who from time to time used to make inroads into his territories where they made a dreadful havock.

Q. In what manner did *William* revenge himself upon them ?

A. He drove them back into their forests, and altho', by the help of some deserters, he pierc'd very far into that mountainous country, he yet lost a greater number of his own soldiers, than he kill'd of the enemy. The *Welsh* having secured themselves in their rocks and other inaccessible places; all he could then do was to rebuild the castle of *Montgomery*, which had been ruin'd.

Q. In what manner do historians relate King *William's* death ?

A. Being one day hunting in *New-Forest*, he was wounded by an arrow shot accidentally by one *Walter Tyrrel*, a *French* Knight, (a domestick of his) of which he

died on *Thursday* the 2^d of *August*, anno 1100, aged forty four years.

Q. How many years did he reign?

A. About thirteen, and left no issue behind him, so that *Henry* his brother succeeded to the crown.

Q. What were the qualities of *William II*?

A. The only good quality remarked in him, was a great courage, which even was not far removed from ferocity. He had had great contestations with *Anselm*, archbishop of *Canterbury*. In a word, he carried his vices and his tyranny to so great a height, that the mortal wound he received was, by many, not consider'd as the effect of chance, but as sent by the hand of God, in order to rid his subjects of so wicked a Prince.

Q. Did he erect any considerable buildings?

A. He rebuilt *London-bridge*; rais'd a new wall round the tower of *London*, and built *Westminster-hall*.

In this Reign, *Glamorganshire* was conquered from the *Britons*, by twelve *English* Knights.

HENRY I. surnam'd Beau-Clerc, XXIII^d King of England,

From 1100 to 1135.

Popes.		JOHN COMNEN.	
PASCHAL II.	1099	<i>Emperors of the West.</i>	
GELASIVS II.	1118	HENRY IV.	1056
CALISTUS II.	1119	HENRY V.	1106
HONORIUS II.	1124	LOTHARIUS II.	1125
INNOCENT II.	1130	<i>Kings of France.</i>	
<i>Emperors of the East.</i>		PHILIP I.	1060
ALEXIS I.	1081	LEWIS VI.	1108

Q. DID *William* leave any issue behind him?

A. No; *Robert* ought to have succeeded him, as well by the right of primogeniture, as by the last treaty made between them; but *Henry*, his younger brother,

brother, taking advantage of his absence, manag'd matters so well, that he was recogniz'd and crown'd King of England, in London, by *Maurice* bishop of that city, after having administer'd the usual oath to him, the 5th of August 1100.

Q. Where was *Robert* at that time?

A. In his return from the *Holy-Land* he had stopt in *Apulia*, to marry there; and 'twas this delay gave his brother an opportunity of siezing upon the crown.

Q. What did he when he heard the news?

A. He made a descent at *Portsmouth*, where he was receiv'd without opposition.

Q. What success had he in his attempt?

A. His own and his brother's friends made themselves mediators in the affair, so that they agreed to a peace; whereupon *Robert* resign'd all his pretensions, upon condition of having a yearly pension of three thousand marks of silver paid him; and he obtain'd a general pardon for all the *English* who had taken up arms in his favour.

Q. Was this peace lasting?

A. No; *Henry* knowing the goodness and generosity of his brother's temper, indulg'd him so many civilities, and manag'd matters so artfully with him, that *Robert* remitted to the King his brother, the pension he had promis'd him; but his wants, which increas'd every day, made him soon sensible of the error he had committed. He thereupon complain'd, that his good nature had been abus'd; and as he added some imprudent menaces to his complaints, *Henry*, who only wanted a pretence to make war upon him, made this a handle; enter'd his territories with a powerful army, and took several strong holds.

Q. Did not *Robert* oppose him?

A. He levied a body of forces, marched out against *Henry*, and coming up with him near *Tinchebray*, a large town in the lower *Normandy*, gave him battle, in which he lost both his liberty and province.

Q. What did *Henry* do with his brother *Robert*?

A. He carried him into *England*, and imprison'd him in the castle of *Cardiff* in *Wales*, where he died of

grief, after 26 years confinement, leaving a son nam'd *William Crito*, who was almost as unsuccessful as his father.

Q. Had *Henry* no dispute afterwards with the *French*?

A. *Lewis le Gros* assisted the petty lords of *Normandy*, who at that time were making war upon their sovereign, and afterwards declar'd war openly; took *Gisors* and other strong holds.

Q. Did any thing remarkable happen in this war?

A. *Henry* cross'd again into *Normandy*, and had like to have been kill'd in a battle, by a *French* Knight. Nevertheless, he took him prisoner, and defeated the *French*. The great standard of *France* was taken, and carried in triumph to *Roan*.

Q. In what manner did this war end?

A. Pope *Calistus II.* and the two Kings came to *Gisors* in 1120, and agreed to a peace, but it was soon broke. The war began afresh, and was carried on with equal success, when a new peace was concluded. *Lewis le Gros* who designed to give the investiture of the dukedom of *Normandy* to *William Crito*, son to *Robert*, gave him first the county of *Flanders*, which he did not long enjoy, for the year following he was kill'd at the siege of *Alost*.

Q. Was King *Henry* engaged in no other wars?

A. Yes; against the *Welsh*, whom he drove back into their holds and caves. But he afterwards granted them a peace.

Q. Did he do any thing for the better government of his dominions?

A. He granted his subjects a very advantageous charter, which confirm'd several privileges they had enjoy'd under the *Saxon* Kings. He added a very important article, viz. the confirmation of *K. Edward's* laws. He reform'd the abuses which had crept into the court. And likewise enacted very severe penalties against offenders.

Q. Why did *Anselm* resist him?

A. The Kings of *England* in those days had the privilege of bestowing investitures, with the *pastoral staff* and

and ring, and to require an oath of allegiance from the prelates; this custom having been condemn'd by a council held at *Rome* in 1104, *Anselm* resolv'd not to suffer the *English* bishops either to receive the investiture, or to take the oath of allegiance, and refus'd absolutely to take it himself.

Q. Did not the King force him to it?

A. *Anselm* at first behav'd with great temper and moderation; and sent some bishops to *Rome* to assert his rights: afterwards went thither in person and pleaded his own cause; when the court of *Rome* having approved his whole conduct, *Henry* forbid him entrance into his dominions; but this severity heal'd all their differences.

Q. In what manner?

A. The Pope finding that it was not in his power to get this prelate recall'd, gave the bishops leave to take the oath.

Q. Was *Henry* ever married?

A. Twice; first with *Maud*, daughter of *Malcolm* King of *Scots*; afterwards to *Adeliza*, daughter to *Geoffrey* earl of *Louvain*, by whom he had no issue.

Q. How many children had he by his Queen *Maud*?

A. *William* duke of *Normandy*, and *Maud*. The former (and another *Maud* countess of *Perche*, his natural sister) perish'd miserably; for the pilots in their passage from *Normandy* to *England*, being overcome with liquor, run them upon the rocks near *Barfleur*, anno 1120. This unforeseen misfortune had such an effect upon the King, that he was never seen to laugh after that. He also left twelve natural children behind him, whereof the most considerable was *Robert* earl of *Gloucester*.

Q. What became of *Maud*?

A. She was first married to the Emperor *Henry V*, and afterwards to *Geoffrey Plantagenet*, count of *Anjou*.

Q. To what do authors impute the death of *Henry*?

A. 'Tis said that he eat so many lampreys as threw him into a fever, of which he died in the castle of *Lyon* in *Brai* near *Roan*.

Q. When did he die?

A. The 1st of *December*, 1135, after having reigned thirty five years. His body was cut into several pieces, in order to be embalm'd, and was buried in the abbey of *Reading* in *England*.

Q. Describe the qualities of this prince?

A. He was very brave, and had a great capacity; was extremely sober; inexorable against offenders; had a great love for learning, whence he was call'd *Beau-clerk*, and was very handsome: but his good qualities were sullied by cruelty, avarice, and uncleanness. To repair, in some measure, these vices, he founded the episcopal sees of *Ely* and *Carlisle*, and some abbies.

HOUSE of BLOIS.

STEPHEN, XXIVth King of England.

From 1135 to 1154.

Popes.		EMANUEL COM.	
INNOCENT II.	1130	<i>Emperors of the West.</i>	1143
CELESTIN II.	1143	LOTHARIUS II.	1125
LUCIUS II.	1144	CONRAD III.	1138
EUGENIUS III.	1145	FREDERIC I.	1152
ANASTAS. IV.	1153	<i>Kings of France.</i>	
ADRIAN V.	1154	LEWIS VI.	1108
<i>Emperors of the East.</i>		LEWIS VII.	1137
JOHN COMNEN.	1118		

Q. WHO succeeded Henry I?

A. Stephen, surnam'd of Blois, the 2^d of *December*.

Q. What pretensions had he to the crown of England?

A. He was son to *Adela*, daughter of *William* the Conqueror, and of *Stephen*, earl of Blois, kill'd in a battle fought against the *Saracens*, in *Syria*, in 1112.

Q. What

Q. What title had he before?

A. That of earl of *Mortain* and *Boulogne*: his personal merit, the intrigues of his brother *Henry*, bishop of *Winchester*, legate of the holy see, and the privileges which he promis'd to grant the *English*, made them prefer him to *Matilda* the Empress, who unfortunately was absent at that time.

Q. In what does the merit of *Stephen* consist?

A. In the greatness of his courage, his elevated genius, the prodigious extent of his views, and the soundness of his judgment; he was perfectly skill'd in the military arts; had great experience; had wonderful patience in concluding treaties, and forming alliances; his clemency and munificence were the most inconsiderable of his virtues: all these were in some measure heightened by the stature and majesty of his person; a placid and insinuating air; in a word, by something inexpressible, which render'd him one of the most amiable princes of his age.

Q. What grants did he make in favour of the *English*?

A. He granted them a very advantageous charter, the chief articles of which are as follow. He acknowledg'd that he possessed the crown by no other tenure than the election of the people and of the clergy. He confirm'd the prerogatives of the church. He abrogated all the laws relating to hunting, and promis'd to abolish the *Dane-geld*. He was crown'd at *Westminster* the 26th of *December*, 1135.

Q. Was he suffer'd to enjoy his usurpation peaceably?

A. No; the *Welsh* made an irruption on the frontiers, and carried off a considerable booty. The *English* lost a great number of Men in a battle, fought against the *Welsh*, near *Caeridigan*. During this, *David* King of *Scotland*, made an incursion into *England*, and won several strong holds; but this war was concluded by a treaty of peace. Some time after, the *Scots* and the *Welsh* made other irruptions in *England*.

Q. Did not the Barons make an insurrection?

A. Yes; an almost general one, but they were subjected by *Stephen*.

Q. Did not *Maud* enter *England*?

A. Yes; in 1139, with the earl of *Gloucester* her brother.

Q. Did her arms meet with great success?

A. The earl of *Gloucester* vanquish'd *Stephen*, who had defended himself with extreme bravery, near *Lincoln*, anno 1140, and took him prisoner; and this victory would have gain'd *Maud* the crown of *England*, had she not been so haughty.

Q. In what manner?

A. She dismiss'd with the utmost pride; *Queen Maud*, *King Stephen*'s consort, who, in the most submissive manner, intreated to have her husband set at liberty; promising to resign his crown, and to go and end his days in a monastery.

Q. What was the consequence of her refusal?

A. The *Queen* resented it so highly, that her anger administring new force to her, she levied a great body of troops, and reinforcing them with those which prince *Eustace* her son had brought to her assistance, she march'd out in search of the enemy, and coming up with them, vanquish'd them; and took the earl of *Gloucester* prisoner, who was exchanged for *King Stephen*, on *All-saints* day in 1141.

Q. Did the war continue after this for any time?

A. Till the 6th of *November*, 1153, when *Stephen* having lost prince *Eustace* his only son, who died in the middle of *August* of the preceding year, adopted *Henry*, son to *Maud* the Empress, and by that means secur'd to himself the enjoyment of the *English* crown till his death.

Q. What is related concerning this adoption?

A. That *Stephen*, reflecting on the ill posture of his affairs, and considering the noble qualities the duke possess'd, and the right he had to the crown, which was strongly supported, was prevail'd on from these considerations at last to consent to the peace, on the terms propos'd by *Henry*.

Q. Did *Stephen* survive this peace any time?

A. He died the 25th of *October* in 1154, being near fifty,

fifty, and after having reign'd nineteen years, and was buried in the abbey of *Feverham*, which he had erected for his own burial place, and that of his family.

Q. Did he leave any children?

A. Yes; but one only legitimate son, call'd *William*, who was earl of *Boulogne*, in right of the Queen his mother. He also had a daughter nam'd *Mary*, who, after taking the veil, married *Philip* of *Alsacia*, but resum'd it after the death of her husband. A natural son, call'd, like the legitimate, *William*; which has occasioned some writers, deceived by the conformity of the names, to assert, that this prince left only one bastard son. He had also another natural son, named *Gervase*, who was Abbot of *Westminster*.

Line of PLANTAGENET, or of the House of ANJOU.

HENRY II. XXVth King of England.

[From 1154 to 1189.]

<i>Popes.</i>			
ADRIAN IV.	1154	ALEXIS II.	1180
ALEXANDER III.	1154	ANDRONICUS I.	1183
LUCIUS III.	1181	ISAAC II.	1185
URBANUS III.	1185	<i>Emperors of the West.</i>	
GREGORY VIII.	1187	FREDERIC I.	1152
CLEMENT III.	1188	<i>Kings of France.</i>	
<i>Emperors of the East.</i>		LEWIS VIII.	1137
EMANUEL COM.	1143	PHILIP II.	1180

Q. WHO succeeded Stephen?

A. Henry II, surnamed *Plantagenet*, duke of *Normandy*, who also added to the crown of England as
so

so many ornaments, *Guienne, Poitou, Saintonge, Maine, Anjou, and Touraine*, of which he was actually possess'd. He was the eldest son of *Geoffry*, earl of *Anjou*, of *Touraine*, and of *Maine*; and of the Empress *Maud*, sole heir of *Henry I.* King of *England*, and duke of *Normandy*.

Q. What particulars are related of his youth?

A. He was born at *Mans* the 5th of *March*, 1133, and was knighted on *Whitsunday*, anno 1149, by *David* King of *Scots*; and made his first campaign in 1152. *Stephen* King of *England*, adopted him the 6th of *November*, 1153.

Q. When was he crown'd King of *England*?

A. The 19th of *December*, in 1155.

Q. What is the character of this prince?

A. He possess'd a thousand fine qualities; was brave, generous, magnificent, clement, just, and prudent; but his ambition and lust were insatiable; his desire of enlarging the bounds of his dominions, unbounded; and his anger very hot and violent.

Q. What did he immediately upon his accession to the throne?

A. He drove a great number of foreigners out of his dominions, whom *Stephen* had invited into them, who inur'd to war, did all that lay in their power to break the peace; raz'd to the ground such fortresses as belong'd to private persons, suffering those only to stand as he thought necessary for the defence of his dominions; revok'd all the donations which his predecessor had made, and resum'd all the lands which had been alienated; restor'd the county of *Westmoreland* to the King of *Scots*, who in return gave him up those of *Northumberland* and *Cumberland*.

Q. What did he after this?

A. Having done homage to *Lewis VII.* King of *France*, for his dukedoms of *Normandy* and of his several earldoms, he falls upon *Geoffry* his own brother, dispossesses him of his dominions, and afterwards declares war with *Raymond*, earl of *Toulouse*, founded on the claim which *Queen Eleanor* his consort laid to the demesnes of that county.

Q. What

Q. What was the success of this war?

A. Henry took *Cahors*, and besieged *Toulouse*, but to no purpose; upon which he concluded a peace, and *Lewis* the younger, King of *France*, who had sided with the earl of *Toulouse*, gave *Margaret* his daughter in marriage to *Henry*, the King of *England*'s eldest son, *William* of *Blois* son to King *Stephen*, died in his return from the expedition of *Toulouse*, whither he had accompanied the King.

Q. In what other wars was Henry engag'd?

A. *Dermoth*, an *Irish* King, being at variance with the other petty sovereigns of that island, implor'd the succour of *Henry* II, who being at that time at war with *France*, bid him address himself to *Robert Fitz-Stephens*, and *Richard Strongbow* earl of *Pembroke*. These two captains, with only 1600 men soon overpower'd the *Irish* princes, and forced them to submit to the power of their arms. *Henry* cross'd into *Ireland*, and appointed *Hugh Lacy*, governor of that island in his name, by the title of grand justiciary.

Q. Was he as fortunate in all his expeditions?

A. He took *William* King of *Scots*, prisoner, who had made an inroad into *Northumberland*; vanquish'd *Philip* earl of *Flanders*, who had made a descent into *England* at the head of a strong body of forces; and, after the death of earl *Geoffry* his brother, whom the people of *Bretagne* had made earl of *Nantes*, he oblig'd *Conan*, duke of *Bretagne*, who had seiz'd upon *Nantes*, to give his daughter *Constance*, heir to his dominions, in marriage to *Geoffry* his third son.

Q. What did the King of *Scotland* in order to recover his liberty?

A. He submitted so far as to restore all he had taken from the *English*; and did homage, in person, for his kingdom, to that prince. He also attacked the *Welsh*, who had made great havock in *England*.

Q. Did fortune always favour him?

A. No; for not to mention the great trouble which the Pope gave him for having put *Thomas Becket*, archbishop of *Canterbury*, to death; his wife and sons rebell'd successively against him, and hardly left him the least interval of peace from the year 1173 till his death.

Q. Are

Q. Are the causes of these insurrections known?

A. They are ascribed to the little share which *Henry* allow'd his sons in the government; his obstinacy in reserving to himself the sovereignty of the several estates which he had assigned to them for their portions; and his amour with *Alice*, daughter of *Lewis* the younger, promis'd and betroth'd to *Richard* his second son.

Q. Have not these amours something of a romantic air?

A. All the *English* historians mention them as real, and even say that *Henry* had a child by *Alice*; that he endeavour'd to get *Eleanor* divorc'd from him; and had resolv'd, in case he succeeded in it, to disinherit his two other children, for their having rebell'd against him; and to declare the children which should spring from this marriage, his successors.

Q. What was the result of this design?

A. It engag'd him in several wars with *Lewis* the younger, and *Philip* his son. *Richard* refused to marry this princess after the death of his father.

Q. What were the wars in which *Henry* II. was last engag'd?

A. *Richard*, exasperated because he refused to let him have *Alice*, took up arms again, and join'd his forces to those of *Philip-Augustus*, when they drove the aged *Henry* out of *Mans* and several other cities.

Q. Did *Henry* survive the peace long?

A. No; the uneasiness he felt for the ill success of his war with *France*; the strict correspondence which *John*, his beloved son, had carried on with *France*, transported him to such a degree, that he died, cursing the day of his birth. He vented imprecations against his two sons. A little time after, he fell sick at *Chinon*, where he caused himself to be carried to the church, before the high altar, and expir'd there. His corps was carried to *Fontevraud*, which he had order'd for the place of his sepulture.

Q. When did *Henry* die?

A. The 6th of *July*, 1189, in the fifty-sixth year of his age, after a reign of thirty-four years, eight months, and twelve days.

Q. Whom did *Henry* II. marry?

A. *Eleanor*

A. Eleanor, of Aquitain, duchess of Guienne and of Gascony, countess of Poitou and Saintonge.

Q. Was she not married before?

A. Yes; to Lewis the younger, by whom she had two daughters; but he being dissatisfied with her conduct, had their marriage dissolv'd in the national council of Bois-genci, upon pretence of her being too nearly related to him.

Q. Had Henry any children by her?

A. Five sons, whereof but two, viz. Richard and John, surviv'd him; but Geoffrey, his third son, left a son and daughter behind him. He had also three daughters, viz. Maud, married to the duke of Saxony; Eleanor, wife of Alphonso King of Castile; and Joan, consort to William II. surnam'd the Good, King of Sicily.

Q. Had not Henry a great number of mistresses?

A. Yes; but the beautiful Rosamond had the greatest ascendant over him, and upon that account was the chief object of the Queen's jealousy, who could not forbear menacing her. He thought he should secure her from any attempt against her life, by securing her in a labyrinth which he caus'd to be built at Woodstock. However, this precaution was to no purpose, for during his absence in Normandy, the Queen found means to take away her rival's life; who had given her so much uneasiness. Henry, at his return, confin'd the Queen very close in prison, where she continu'd till his death.

Q. Had he no illegitimate children?

A. He had two by fair Rosamond, daughter of the lord Clifford, viz. William, surnam'd Long-sword, earl of Salisbury; and Geoffrey archbishop of York. By a daughter of Sir Ralph Bleset, he had another son call'd Morgan, who having been elected bishop of Durham, could not obtain a confirmation of the Pope, because he refused to assume the name of his grandfather, by the mother's side.

Q. Relate the story of Thomas archbishop of Canterbury.

A. His name was Thomas Becket, son to a tradesman of London, and his mother was a Syrian. He had been a lawyer. The King made him lord high chancellor,

and afterwards archbishop of *Canterbury*: but after he was raised to that dignity, he affected to be independent on the court, on all occasions. *Henry* was so exasperated at it, that he had him impeach'd of high-treason. But *Thomas* appeal'd from it to *Rome*; withdrew to the abbey of *Pontigni* in *France*, and afterwards to that of *St. Colombe de Sens*.

Q. What reception did the archbishop's appeal meet with at *Rome*?

A. *Alexander III.* at that time Pope, being a very strenuous asserter of the prerogatives of the clergy, publickly espoused *Thomas's* cause; which so enraged King *Henry*, that he threatned to make an alliance with *Frederic-Barberossa*, and *Paschal* the anti-pope; at which *Alexander* was so highly offended, that he threatned to put the kingdom of *England* under an interdict.

Q. What was the result of this quarrel?

A. They were reconcil'd the 22^d of *July*, 1170; whereupon *Thomas* return'd back to his see, after having been banish'd seven years.

Q. Was this reconciliation lasting?

A. No; for the King upon certain reports that were made to him concerning the archbishop, complain'd publickly, that he had no one in his court to revenge him on that priest, from whom he had received such great insults; upon which four of his domesticks hearing this, they, to please him, set out immediately for *Canterbury*, where they beat out *Thomas's* brains with their swords, insomuch that the altar was all cover'd with his blood. This was in his own cathedral, as he was saying vespers on the 29th of *December*.

Q. What follow'd this murder?

A. The Pope excommunicated King *Henry*; but after having made a publick declaration that he was innocent of his death, and submitting himself to every thing that was requir'd of him, he went to *Avranches*, an episcopal city in the lower *Normandy*, where two legates gave him absolution.

Q. Did his zeal stop here?

A. In 1174, he went in pilgrimage to *Becket's* tomb, and

and there receiv'd several lashes, from the hands of the prior and the monks.

Q. Do not historians differ very much in the character they give of this archbishop?

A. So much, that some have rank'd him among the most illustrious martyrs, while others thought they might justly refuse him the title of an honest man, and a good christian: and fifty years after his death, a dispute arose in the university of *Paris*, whether his soul was in heaven or in hell; so ambiguous was his piety.

Q. What liberties were granted by *Henry*?

A. He permitted the laws of *Edward* to be reviv'd, and confirm'd the charter of *Henry I.* his grandfather: but this condescension of the King was but merely specious.

RICHARD I. surnam'd *Cœur de Lion*,
(or Lion's Heart,) the XXIVth King of
England and Cyprus.

From 1189 to 1199.

Popes.		Emperors of the West.	
CLEMENT III.	1188	FREDERIC I.	1152
CELESTINE III.	1191	HENRY VI.	1190
INNOCENT III.	1198	PHILIP I.	1197
Emperors of the East.		King of France.	
ISAAC II.	1185	PHILIP II.	1180
ALEXIS III.	1195		

Q. WHO succeeded *Henry II*?

A. *Richard I.* his second son.

Q. What was the character of this Prince?

A. He was of such bravery, as merited him the surname of *Cœur de Lion*. But after this applause of his valour, which was something akin to ferocity; 'tis to no purpose to seek for some other virtue in this prince, which may deserve an elogium.

Q. How do you describe his person?

A. He was well shap'd. His eyes were blue, but full of fire; and his hair of a yellow cast, not far unlike red.

Q. What are the most remarkable incidents in his history?

A. After having concluded a peace with *Philip-Augustus*, who gave him back *Mans*, and the rest of the cities which he had taken from *Henry*, he went to *Roan*, where the ducal sword was put into his hand, on the 20th of *July*, 1189; set his mother *Queen Eleanor* at liberty, who had been imprison'd sixteen years, cross'd into *England*, and was crown'd at *Westminster* on the 3^d of *September* of the same year.

Q. What actions did he perform in the beginning of his reign?

A. He rais'd an army of five and thirty thousand men, in order to go to the wars in the *Holy-Land*; invested his brother *John* with the government of six counties. Left the government of *England* to *William Longchamp*, bishop of *Ely*, his chancellor, the Pope's legate, in conjunction with the bishop of *Durham*; cross'd over again into *France*; had an interview with *Philip* at *Vezelai*, the 25th of *June*, anno 1190, went to *Marseilles*, and from thence into *Sicily*, where he spent the winter with *Philip*, who also had engaged himself in the crusade.

Q. Did not a quarrel break out between these two monarchs in this country?

A. Yes; by the practises of *Tancred* King of *Sicily*, who, being disgusted at *Richard*, endeavoured to engage the King of *France* in his quarrel; but *Philip*, a prince of great wisdom and moderation, prevented so fatal an accident, by going to *Acon*, to which the Christians had already laid siege.

Q. Did not *Richard* follow him?

A. He embark'd some days after, but a storm arising, part of his fleet was cast on the coast of *Cyprus*, when *Isaac*, King of that island, imprison'd all those who had escap'd the shipwreck, and would not permit the princes *Berengera* of *Navarre*, (betroth'd to *Richard*) and the

Queen

Queen dowager of *Sicily*, to shelter themselves in the port.

Q. Was not this cruel action fatal to *Isaac*?

A. *Richard* defeated the troops of *Isaac*, dispossess'd him of his cities; loaded him with silver chains; made himself master of *Cyprus*, left strong garrisons in it, and after having consummated his marriage with *Berengera* of *Navarre*, in the city of *Limisso* in *Cyprus*, he went afterwards to the camp before *Acon*.

Q. Did not the misunderstanding between *Richard* and King *Philip* break out afresh?

A. Yes; *Richard* having acquired a certain superiority which very much mortified the King of *France*, the jealousy of the latter broke out on every occasion.

Q. What measures did King *Philip* take?

A. *Acon* having been taken in 1191, and the King finding himself extremely sick, he left the camp; and leaving the command of his army to the duke of *Burgundy*, he put to sea again, and arriv'd happily in *France*.

Q. Did *Richard* signalize himself so as to answer the great reputation he had gain'd in the world?

A. The 7th of *September*, anno 1191, he entirely defeated the army of *Saladine*, and kill'd upwards of 40000 of his soldiers. He repair'd the maritime cities of *Astalon*, of *Joppa*, and *Casarea*, which *Saladine* had thought proper to abandon, after having demolished their fortifications, and some time after was forc'd to return back into *England*.

Q. What was the occasion of his return?

A. His want of forage, his being abandon'd by the christian princes, the fear he was under lest *Philip* should sieze any of his dominions in *France*, during his absence, and the news he heard that his brother had rebell'd.

Q. What did he before his departure?

A. He married *Isabella*, Queen of *Jerusalem*, to *Henry* earl of *Champaign*, his nephew, whom he caus'd to be elected generalissimo of the Christian army, after the murder of the marquiss of *Montferrat*; gave his king-

dom of *Cyprus* to *Guy de Lusignan*, and concluded a truce for three years with *Saladine*.

Q. Was his voyage prosperous?

A. No; for he was cast away on the coast of *Istria*: and having taken a resolution to travel thro' *Germany* in a peasant's disguise, he fell into the hands of *Leopold*, duke of *Austria*, whom he had affronted at the siege of *Acon*.

Q. What treatment did he meet with from him?

A. He kept him very close prisoner, and afterwards deliver'd him to the Emperor *Henry VI.* his sworn enemy, who after obliging him to pay a ransom of 100000 marks of silver, set him at liberty. *Richard* embark'd at *Antwerp* for *England*, and arriv'd happily at *Sandwich*, the 13th of *March*, 1194, after having been absent from his country four years, fifteen months of which he had spent in prison.

Q. Where did *Richard* go after this?

A. Having been recrown'd, (after having reduc'd some castles, of which the partisans of his brother were still possess'd) he cross'd immediately into *France*, where *Philip*, who fomented the rebellion of *John* his brother, was invading his dominions. *Richard* was reconcil'd to his brother *John* at *Roan*.

Q. Was not this war followed by a truce?

A. Yes; and it was concluded for five years, in a conference they had together, in which it was agreed, that each should remain in possession of what he held at that time. This war had been carried on five years, and was often interrupted by treaties, which were generally ill observed on both sides.

Q. For what reason?

A. *Richard* laid siege to *Chaluz* in *Limousin*, in order to sieze upon a considerable treasure, which a gentleman of that province had found in his grounds.

Q. What happened in *London* during the absence of *Richard*?

A. An insurrection was rais'd in it by a citizen, who had gain'd great credit with the populace; but he was siez'd and hang'd, with nine of his accomplices.

Q. What was the event of this siege?

A. It

A. It was fatal to King *Richard*, for he was wounded with an arrow, shot by a cross-bow-man, call'd, *Bertram Gordon*, which kill'd him, on the 6th of *April*, 1199, the tenth year of his reign, and the forty-third of his age. *Chaluz* was won before he expired. He was buried at *Fontevraud*.

Q. Did he leave any natural children?

A. Only one son call'd *Philip*, to whom he bequeathed the lordship of *Cognac* in the duchy of *Guienne*. *Richard* was the first King of *England* who took three lions passant for his arms, in which he was imitated by his successors. During his reign, the city of *London* began, with respect to its government, to assume a new form, to be divided into different corporations or societies, or as they are now term'd companies.

JOHN, surnam'd Sans-Terre, or Without Land, XXVIIth King of England.

From 1199 to 1216.

Popes.		Emperors of the West.	
INNOCENT III.	1198	PHILIP I.	1197
HONORIUS III.	1215	OTHO IV.	1208
Emperors of the East.		French Emp: of Constant.	
ALEXIS III.	1195	BALDWIN I.	1204
ALEXIS IV.	1203	HENRY I.	1206
ALEXIS V.	1204	Kings of France.	
THEODORUS I.	1204	PHILIP II.	1180

Q. WHO succeeded *Richard I*?

A. His brother *John*, surnam'd *Sans-Terre*, (without land) by virtue of the last will of *Richard*, and the credit of four persons, viz. *Hubert*, archbishop of *Canterbury*, *William Marshall*, the chief justiciary, and *Queen Eleanor* his mother. He came into *England*, and was crown'd at *Westminster* the 28th of *May*, by *Hubert*

abovemention'd. *Richard* had formerly appointed *Arthur* duke of *Bretagne*, his nephew, son to *Geoffrey*, his elder brother, his heir.

Q. Was he undisturbed in his kingdom?

A. *Phillip* took *Arthur* under his protection, but his arms made very little progress; for the earl of *Flanders* and the Emperor *Otho*, nephew to *John*, being in his interest, *Philip* perceived this war did not promise him any success; and so he sued for peace, which *John* granted him.

Q. What were the conditions of this peace?

A. That *Philip* should not give any succours to the duke of *Bretagne*; that he should restore to *John* the earldom of *Exreux*, *Berry*, *Auvergne*, and all he had dispossest'd the *English* of since the death of *Richard*; and that *John* should not give any succour to the Emperor *Otho* who was at war with *France*.

Q. Was this peace lasting?

A. No; for King *John* having divorc'd *Avisa*, his second wife, daughter of the earl of *Gloucester*, married *Isabella* daughter and heir to *Aimer*, viscount of *Angoulesme*, and of *Adeleide* of *Courtenay*, affianced to *Hugh* earl of *la Marche*; who being excited to revenge by *Philip*, stirred up the nobles of *Poitou* to take up arms.

Q. What was the consequence of this?

A. *Philip* cited *John* to appear before his parliament, to shew cause for his proceeding in this manner: but King *John* refusing to do it, *Philip* making this a handle, entered *Normandy* sword-in-hand, and sent *Arthur*, to whom he had given *Mary* his eldest daughter in marriage, a body of troops, in order to make a diversion on his side.

Q. Did *Arthur* signalize himself by any memorable action?

A. Having been surpriz'd by King *John* in *Mirabel*, to the castle whereof he had laid siege, and to which Queen *Eleanor* his grandmother was retired, *Arthur* was carried prisoner to *Roan*; and some days after, the King according to some historians, caus'd him to be murder'd, and his body to be thrown into the *Seine*.

Q. Did this murder go unpunish'd?

A. *Philip*

A. Philip summon'd King *John* to appear, and to shew cause before the court of peers, why he had perpetrated so barbarous an action; but he refusing to obey, he declared him guilty of high-treason, confiscated his possessions, and advancing with a numerous army, conquer'd *Anjou*, *Touraine*, *Maine*, and *Poitou*, and re-united all *Normandy* to his demesnes, three hundred and twenty years after it had been sever'd from the crown of *France* by *Charles the Simple*.

Q. Did not King *John* endeavour to oppose his conquests?

A. As he devoted himself entirely to his pleasures, he only sent some succours to the *Poitevins*, who had declared for him; however, he cross'd the sea in 1206, and reduced the greatest part of *Poitou*; but suffer'd himself to be over-reach'd by *Philip*, who not being prepar'd, sued for, and obtain'd a truce for two years.

Q. Did not he quarrel with the Pope?

A. The election of the archbishop of *Canterbury* gave him a great deal of trouble.

Q. In what manner was this done?

A. Some young monks of the monastery of *St. Austin* in *Canterbury*, had secretly elected *Reginald*, their sub-prior, archbishop; but the King being offended, they desisted from the election. The King having afterwards recommended the bishop of *Norwich*, he was elected by all the monks, and seated on the episcopal throne.

Q. What was the consequence of this dispute?

A. The Pope refus'd to ratify either election; and commanded the monks, who were come to *Rome* upon that affair, to elect cardinal *Langton*, an *Englishman*, doctor of *Paris*, and a man of great learning and sound morals.

Q. How far was the King of *England* concern'd in this?

A. He enter'd his protest against the election, and expell'd the monks of *St. Austin* from their monastery; whereupon his whole kingdom was put under an interdict; which exasperated him to so great a degree, that he banish'd out of his dominions, all the clergy that obey'd the interdict; treated all those cruelly who con-

tinued

tinued in them, after the time appointed for their going away was elapsed, and confiscated all their possessions.

Q. What measures did the Pope take upon this occasion?

A. He excommunicated King *John*, gave his kingdom to King *Philip*, and granted indulgences to all those who should declare war against him.

Q. What effect had this upon King *John*?

A. He took off, at *Dover*, in presence of all the people, the crown from his own head, and laid it at the feet of *Pandulph* the legate, who represented the Pope.

Q. Was this all?

A. From a meanness of spirit, for which he was censur'd by all his subjects, he agreed, that if either himself or any of his successors should refuse to pay the submission due to them; they should lose all their rights to the crown.

Q. Did his submission put a stop to the progress of King *Philip's* arms?

A. No; 'twas the great defeat of his fleet, which attack'd the earl of *Flanders*. The earl of *Salisbury* commanded the *English* fleet, which quite destroyed that of *France*.

Q. What did *John* after this victory?

A. He got the interdict taken off, after which he marched into *Poitou*, and immediately subjected that province. From thence he advanced into *Anjou*. *Philip* being employed at that time in the *Low-Countries*, prince *Lewis* his son, marched at the head of a numerous army. *John* resolved at first to attack him, but the *Poitevins* refusing to follow him, he was obliged to retire with some precipitation. A little after, *Philip* granted him a truce for five years.

Q. Did his misfortunes end here?

A. The barons requir'd him to restore the laws of *St. Edward*, and the rights and privileges contain'd in the charter of *Henry I.* which he granted them; but having afterwards broke his word, they elected for their generals the lord *Fitz-Walter*, and gave him the title of *Marshal of the Army of God, and of the Church*. They then besieged some castles, and march'd to *London*, where they

they wrote menacing letters to all the lords who were in the King's interest, upon which they went over to the barons. King *John* being now intimidated, granted the barons all they requir'd, and sign'd two charters. The first was called the *Charter of Liberties*, or *Magna Charta*; and the second, the *Charter of Forests*. These two charters have since been the foundations of the liberties of this nation.

Q. Did not *John* endeavour to revenge himself on the barons?

A. Yes; by raising an army of foreigners, by whose aid he obtained several conquests; but the barons having invited *Lewis*, son to the King of *Faance*, with a promise to set the crown on his head, *Lewis* accordingly landed at *Sandwich*, the twenty-first of *May*, anno 1216, and was crown'd, according to some writers, (but none of the *English* historians make the least mention of his coronation,) and afterwards made himself master of the best part of *England*.

Q. Did King *John* long survive these misfortunes?

A. After having been in perpetual motion, he died at *Newark*, the eighth of *October*, 1216, with grief for having lost his rich baggage, that threw him into a fever, which was increased by his eating too many peaches.

Q. How old was he?

A. Near fifty-one years, whereof he had reign'd almost eighteen.

Q. What is the character of this prince?

A. According to *Matthew Paris*, he had wit, but of the vicious kind; was hot-headed, restless and hasty; had no manner of resolution, but in his first transports, which being over, he was soft, indolent, fearful, and wavering: he was cruel, voluptuous and covetous; had neither faith, religion, conscience, honour or consideration for futurity. However, we must make this observation, that those historians, who have writ the lives of princes that were at variance with the court of *Rome*, ought to be read with the utmost caution; and that the only way of forming a just character of such princes, is to draw it from their actions.

Q. Was

Q. Was he ever married?

A. Yes, thrice; first to *Alice*, daughter of *Hugh* earl of *Morton*; secondly, to *Avisa*, heiress of the house of *Gloucester*, whom he repudiated, and married *Isabella*, daughter of *Aimar*, earl of *Angoulesme*.

Q. Did he leave any children?

A. He had none by his two first wives, but had five by his third, viz. *Henry*, his successor; *Richard*, earl of *Cornwal*, and King of the *Romans*; *Joan*, wife to *Alexander* II. King of *Scots*; *Isabella*, wife to the Emperor *Frederic* II. and *Eleanor*, married first to *William Marshall*, earl of *Pembroke*, and afterwards to *Simon de Montfort*, earl of *Leicester*. He had also six natural children.

Q. Had *John* no contentions with his other neighbours?

A. The King of *Scotland* paid him homage in *Lincoln*. The Prince of *Wales* likewise paid him homage at *Woodstock*. He took prisoner the King of *Connaught*, an *Irish* Prince, who had rebell'd and subjected the whole nation.

Q. What were the most remarkable events that happen'd in other countries during his reign?

A. The taking of *Constantinople* by the *French* and *Venetians* in 1204, and the crusade against the *Albigenses*, which gave rise to the inquisition.

HENRY

HENRY II. *surnam'd* of Winchester, XXVIIIth King of England.

From 1216 to 1272.

<i>Popes.</i>		<i>Emperors of the West.</i>	
HONORIUS III.	1216	OTHO IV.	1208
GREGORY IX.	1227	FREDERIC II.	1212
CELESTIN IV.	1241		
INNOCENT IV.	1243	<i>French Emp. of Constant.</i>	
ALEXAND. IV.	1254	HENRY I.	1206
URBAN IV.	1261	PETER II.	1217
CLEMENT IV.	1261	ROB. DE COUR	1221
		BALDWIN II.	1237
<i>Emperors of the East.</i>		<i>Kings of France.</i>	
THEODORE I.	1204	PHILIP II.	1180
JOHN III.	1222	LEWIS VIII.	1223
THEODORE II.	1225	S. LEWIS IX.	1226
JOHN IV.	1259	PHILIP III.	1270
MICHAEL VIII.	1259		

2. **W**H O succeeded *John*, surnam'd *Sans-Terre*?
A. Henry III, his eldest son, who was but in the tenth year of his age, being born the first of October, anno 1207. He was crown'd at *Gloucester*, the 28th of October.

2. By what methods did Henry ascend the throne?

A. The earl of *Pembroke* engaged the lords, who had followed King *John*'s fortune, to recognize him for their King; and the legate excommunicated Prince *Lewis*. The earl of *Pembroke* was appointed regent.

2. Was this effectual?

A. These censures prevail'd on a great number; among whom were *William Marshall*, eldest son of the earl of *Pembroke*; and the voyage which *Lewis* was oblig'd to make into *France*, in order to levy money and forces, gave the earl of *Pembroke* an opportunity of winning

over those of the contrary party. The cinque-ports also declar'd for *Henry*.

Q. Was *Lewis* therefore intirely abandon'd?

A. Yes; for the earl of *Perche* had lost the famous battle of *Lincoln* with his life, the 19th of *May*, 1217; and the succours which the illustrious *Blanche*, King *Lewis's* consort, sent him, having been defeated by the fleet of the cinque-ports, on *August* the 24th, that prince was obliged to make a treaty, by which he renounced all pretensions to *England*, and thereupon he and the *French* left the kingdom.

Q. To whom was prince *Henry* oblig'd for these happy successes?

A. To *William*, earl of *Pembroke*. 'Twas he who won the battle of *Lincoln*, and concluded the treaty of renunciation with *Lewis*; who had caus'd the two charters to be observ'd, and who govern'd the kingdom happily till his death, in 1219.

Q. To whom was the government of the kingdom committed till he came of age?

A. To *Hubert de Burgh*, (who had defended *Dover*, and was made chief justiciary of *England*) and to the bishop of *Winchester*.

Q. How did these two ministers conduct themselves in the administration?

A. Admirably well, so long as they endeavour'd to carry on the affairs of the young Prince with order and justice; but the moment they endeavour'd to insinuate themselves into his favour, they quarrell'd, and *de Burgh* who prevail'd, declar'd the King to be of age, in the parliament held in 1226, and got the bishop dismiss'd the year after.

Q. Was not the great credit of *de Burgh* disadvantageous to the kingdom?

A. He twice diverted his sovereign from crossing into *France* with an army, in order to succour the malecontents, whereof he might have made a very considerable advantage.

Q. Did he afterwards prevail in dissuading King *Henry* from it?

A. No; the young Prince went over thither, notwithstanding

withstanding all his endeavours to hinder him; landed at *S. Malo*, whither the duke of *Bretagne* came to receive him, but he did not make a proper use of these advantages; for instead of marching into *Normandy*, he made for *Poitou*, and went afterwards into *Guienne*, but the instant the enemy approach'd towards him, he return'd shamefully into *England*.

Q. What did the *English* on this occasion?

A. They united themselves, and carry'd on their project so happily, that they persuaded the King to banish *Hubert de Burgh*, who was now earl of *Kent*, and son-in-law to the King of *Scots*, and to restore the bishop of *Winchester* to the administration.

Q. Did this prelate conduct himself better than his predecessor had done?

A. Much worse; and the *English* being exasperated when they saw that he fill'd up all places of trust with none but foreigners, took up arms under the conduct of the earl of *Pembroke*, who routed the armies of the King, and oblig'd the monarch to shut himself up in *Winchester*. However, that nobleman died miserably, by the artifices of the bishop of *Winchester*. This prelate was disgrac'd a little after, at the instigation of the new archbishop of *Canterbury*.

Q. Did the removal of the bishop put a stop to the insurrection?

A. Yes; but it soon broke out again; for the King, in 1236, having married *Eleonora*, daughter of *Raymond*, earl of *Provence*, his court was by that means fill'd with foreigners, on whom the greatest posts were bestow'd; but the *English* being displeas'd at this partiality, combin'd together against the King.

Q. Who was the chief of this league?

* A. *Simon de Montfort* earl of *Leicester*, whom the barons elected their general.

Q. What actions did the confederates perform?

A. They forc'd the King to sign and approve some articles, which were entituled, *The Statutes or Expedients of Oxford*; and oblig'd him to lay down the sovereign authority, and to lodge it in twenty-four commissioners,

call'd *Conservators*, twelve of whom were nominated by them, and twelve by the King.

Q. Was this agreement lasting?

A. No; so that both sides took up arms: but King *Henry* lost the battle of *Lewes*, on the 14th of *May*, in 1264, and was taken prisoner, as also his son, his brother, and his nephew.

Q. How did the earl of *Leicester* dispose of those illustrious captives?

A. He shut up Prince *Edward* King *Henry's* son, and Prince *Henry*, son to *Richard* the King's brother, in *Dover* castle; confin'd the King of the *Romans* in the tower of *London*, kept the King with him, and carry'd him, as it were, to grace his triumph, thro' all the cities of the kingdom, and siez'd upon the sovereign authority in the King's name.

Q. Did matters continue long in this state?

A. During a year; at the end of which *Edward* escap'd out of prison; rais'd a body of troops; when he encounter'd the earl of *Leicester* at *Evesham*, on the 5th of *August*, 1265; there the earl lost the battle and his life, as also one of his sons; and by this means restor'd the King his father to his liberty.

Q. Did this victory put an end to the confederacy?

A. *Simon*, son to the earl of *Leicester*, sustain'd a siege in the island of *Axholm*; but after a pretty vigorous defence he was forc'd to surrender, and was allow'd the liberty to leave the kingdom. A little after he join'd with certain pirates of the cinque-ports, and with these plunder'd indiscriminately all the merchant ships that came in his way.

Q. Was the league now quite at an end?

A. No; another rebel, nam'd *Adam de Gurden*, having appear'd in arms in *Hampshire*, *Edward* marched that way. In a battle which was fought, *Adam* was taken prisoner by Prince *Edward*, who generously gave him his life and liberty: some of the confederates fortified themselves in the isle of *Ely*, where they continued till 1267, when Prince *Edward* forc'd them to submit to the King his father; and the earl of *Gloucester*, son to the chief of the league, surrender'd up *London* this same year 1267.

Q. Was

Q. Was *England* free from insurrections after this surrender?

A. Yes; and the royal authority was settled on so firm a basis, that Prince *Edward* thought he might securely make a voyage into the *Holy-Land*, where he made but very inconsiderable atchievements. He nevertheless gave the *Saracens* a proof of what they might expect from him, in case he should be assisted by a greater force. A villain who was sent by these infidels, was going to plunge a dagger into his bosom, had not *Edward* warded off the blow with his arm, in which he was dangerously wounded. The assassin was going to strike again, but *Edward* gave him so furious a kick on the breast, that he threw him backwards and kill'd him.

Q. Where did *Henry* die?

A. In the city of *London*, the 16th of *November*, 1272, aged sixty-six years, of which he had reigned fifty-six, and twenty days.

Q. Was he ever married?

A. In 1236 he married *Eleanor of Provence*, by whom he had nine children, whereof five died in their infancy, but two sons and two daughters liv'd to an advanc'd age.

Q. What were their names?

A. *Edward*, who succeeded him; *Edmund*, earl of *Lancaster*, to whom Pope *Innocent IV*, who was for dispossessing the house of *Suabia* of the throne of *Sicily*, gave the investiture of that kingdom; but the nobles having refus'd to furnish money for that purpose, this grant was of no effect. *Margaret*, the eldest of his two daughters being but nine years of age, marry'd *Alexander III*. King of *Scots*; *Beatrix*, the second, *John de Dreux*, duke of *Bretagne*.

Q. What was the character of King *Henry III*?

A. He was a Prince of very inconsiderable parts; was naturally inconstant and capricious. He was greedy of money to excess, but then he squander'd it away to so little purpose, that the prodigious sums he levied on his subjects, never made him the richer. Nothing can be said in favour of his courage, because he never gave any sensible marks of it; but he may justly be applauded

for his continence, and his aversion to every thing that tended to cruelty, he having always contented himself with punishing the rebels no otherwise than in their purses. To conclude, his weakness in suffering himself to be govern'd by haughty, self-interested counsellors, and the arbitrary maxims which had been instill'd into him from his infancy, were the real causes of the commotions which disturbed his reign.

Q Was there not a remarkable change made in the constitution of parliament in this reign?

A. Yes; for before the 49th of Henry III, the parliaments consisted of the archbishops, bishops, abbots, earls and barons. Of these barons there were two sorts, *the greater Barons*, or the King's chief tenants, who held of him in *capite* by barony: And *the lesser Barons*, who held of the first by military service, *in capite*. The former had summons to parliament by several writs: and the latter, (*i. e.* all those who were possess'd of *thirteen Knights's Fees and a quarter*,) had a general summons from the sheriff in each county. These things continued till the 49th of Henry III, when, instead of keeping the old form, the prevailing powers thought fit to summon, not all, but those of the greater Barons, who were of their party. And instead of the lesser Barons, who came with large retinues, they sent their precepts to the sheriff in each county, to cause *two Knights* in every *Shire* to be chosen, and *One or Two Burgeses* for each *Burgh*, to represent the body of the people, residing in those Counties and *Burghs*. This method hath been observed ever since.

EDWARD,

EDWARD, *surnam'd* Long-shanks, XXIXth King of England.

From 1272 to 1307.

<i>Popes.</i>		<i>Emperors of the East.</i>	
GREGORY X.	1271	MICHAEL VIII.	1259
INNOCENT V.	1276	ANDRONICUS II.	1283
ADRIAN V.	1276		
JOHN XXI.	1276	<i>Emperors of the West.</i>	
NICHOLAS III.	1277	FREDERIC II. *	1212
MARTIN IV.	1281	RODOLPHUS I.	1273
HONORIUS IV.	1285	ADOLF. of Nassau	1291
NICHOLAS IV.	1288	ALBERT I.	1298
CELESTIN V.	1294		
BONIFACE VIII.	1294	<i>Kings of France.</i>	
BENEDICT IX.	1303	PHILIP III.	1270
CLEMENT V.	1305	PHILIP IV.	1285

Q. WHO succeeded Henry III?
A. Edward, *surnam'd* Long-shanks, his eldest son.

Q. Where was he when his father died?

A. He was returning from *Palestine*, and continuing his voyage, he arriv'd happily in *Sicily*, where *Charles of Anjou*, gave him a very honourable reception. 'Twas at *Messina* he heard of the death of the King his father. He pass'd by *Rome*, in order to pay a visit to the new Pope, who was his intimate friend. He afterwards

* After the death of *Frederic*, there was an *interregnum* in the empire till *Rodolphus*; during which the following princes either reign'd or were elected; viz. *Conrade III.* *William* earl of *Holland*, *Richard* earl of *Cornwal*, this King's uncle; *Edward IV.* and *Alphonso* King of *Castile*.

took

took the rout of *France*, and paid homage to *Philip* for *Guienne*; whence, after settling his affairs there, he came over into *England*, where he was crown'd the 19th of *August* 1274, *Alexander III.* King of *Scots*, *John* duke of *Bretagne*, and all the nobility of the kingdom being present at it. Historians relate, that at this solemnity five hundred horses were suffer'd to run loose about the country, with liberty to all those who could catch them, to keep them.

Q. What were his first exploits?

A. He declar'd war against *Llewellyn* Prince of *Wales*, for having refus'd to assist at the ceremony of his coronation, and excus'd himself from paying him homage.

Q. What success had he in it?

A. *Llewellyn*, altho' a brave and experienc'd captain, was nevertheless defeated, dispossest of his strong holds, and oblig'd to submit to the conqueror, who received him with the utmost civility and complaisance.

Q. Did the *Welsh* enjoy peace for any time?

A. No; *David* brother of *Llewellyn*, was perpetually exciting his brother to take up arms, to rescue himself from subjection; upon which *Llewellyn* took up arms to shake off this heavy yoke, and afterwards made an incursion into the territories of the *English*, and defeated their generals.

Q. What did *Edward* do on this occasion?

A. He march'd into *Wales* at the head of a numerous army. *Llewellyn* having retir'd to a mountain that was almost inaccessible, came down from it, in order to fight the *English*, not considering the inequality of his forces. This Prince was kill'd on the spot, and his army entirely routed. *Edward* caus'd his head to be cut off, and to be set up on the *Tower of London*. Some time after *David*, brother to *Llewellyn*, was taken and beheaded in a cruel manner.

Q. Had these Princes any successors?

A. No; for *Edward* seiz'd upon the whole country, and knowing that a foreign government was very obnoxious to the *Welsh*, he oblig'd his Queen, who was
fix

six months gone with child, to go and lye-in among them; accordingly she was deliver'd of a Prince, (to whom they gave the name of *Edward*, and the surname of *Caernarvon*, from the place of his birth) who was the first Prince of *Wales*; and the eldest sons of the Kings of *England* have ever since bore that title.

Q. What other memorable actions did *Edward* perform?

A. *Alexander III.* King of *Scots* being dead, princess *Margaret* his grand-daughter, who a little before had been promis'd to the Prince of *Wales* his son, having surviv'd him but a few months; *Edward* was chosen arbiter between *Robert Bruce* and *John Baliol*, who both laid claim to the crown.

Q. In whose favour did he declare?

A. In favour of *John Baliol*, who did him homage after his coronation, pursuant to the promise he had made King *Edward*, in order to engage him to declare in his favour.

Q. How did the *Scots* take this his mean condescension?

A. Very ill; and *Baliol* himself was so ashamed of it, that he only sought an opportunity of repairing it publicly.

Q. Did any one present itself?

A. The war, in which King *Edward* was personally engag'd in *France*, was very favourable to him; but a truce that was concluded very unseasonably for him; the return of King *Edward* into *England*; the deserting of *Robert Bruce*, which greatly weaken'd his party; the loss of a battle fought against the *English*; the great progress *Edward* made after his victory, he possessing himself of the greatest part of *Scotland*, were of such ill consequences to *Baliol* and all his nobility, that they had no other resource but to abandon themselves to his mercy, after which *Baliol* resign'd the kingdom to him, to dispose of it as he pleas'd.

Q. What became of *Baliol*?

A. *Edward* seiz'd him, and confin'd him in the Tower of *London*, where he remain'd prisoner till July 1299. And then *Edward* caus'd the crown and scepter of *Scotland*.

land, and the famous Stone of *Scone*, to be brought into *England*; after which he conquer'd all *Scotland*, and made it a province of *England*, and loaded it with grievous taxations, and left very strong garrisons in it; however, all this could not secure him the conquest thereof.

Q. For what reason?

A. One *William Wallace*, a soldier of fortune, rais'd a body of troops, dispossessed them of several strong holds, and gain'd such a reputation in that nation, that the prime nobility follow'd his standards with pleasure. He was even declar'd regent of the kingdom by his army.

Q. Did this continue for any time?

A. No; the noblemen calling to mind a little after, that he was of less noble extraction than they, were for dividing the command; and at last they carry'd their disputes to such a height, that it was impossible to reconcile them, notwithstanding that a victorious army, headed by King *Edward* himself, appear'd in fight.

Q. Did he take any advantage of this discord?

A. Yes; he attack'd and defeated them at *Falkirk*: *Wallace* with the remains of his defeated army, retir'd behind the marshes in the North, whither there was no possibility of pursuing him. *Edward* recover'd all the strong holds which *Wallace* had siez'd, and reduc'd *Scotland* to so deplorable a condition, that he thought it would be impossible for that nation ever to shake off the *English* yoke.

Q. Was *Edward* mistaken?

A. *Wallace* having quitted the regency, the *Scots* chose *Gomyn* in his room, who rais'd up the whole kingdom against the *English*, upon which *Edward* enter'd a third time into *Scotland*, and entirely defeated the *Scotch* army.

Q. Was *Edward* satisfy'd with this advantage?

A. No; he carry'd his arms a fourth time into *Scotland*; with so numerous an army, that he did not meet with the least resistance. The taking of the castle of *Sterling* ended this fourth expedition of *Edward*, and his
third

third conquest. This monarch caus'd the brave *Wallace* to be cruelly executed, as guilty of high treason.

Q. Did this severity intimidate the *Scots*?

A. No; *Robert Bruce*, son of him whom we spoke of, and young *Comyn*, who both had pretensions to the kingdom, made a treaty in order to cause *Scotland* to rise up in arms. *Comyn* would have taken advantage of this insurrection, tho' contrary to the promise he had made; but *Robert* hasten'd thither, stabb'd him with his own hand, and made himself be solemnly crown'd in *Scone*.

Q. Was he able to withstand *Edward*?

A. He found it very difficult; for having lost two battles against the earl of *Pembroke*, whom *Edward* had sent to oppose him, he had the mortification to see himself dispossessed of his strong holds; his relations persecuted; his wife thrown into prison; his brothers kill'd; so that, being universally abandon'd, he himself was oblig'd to leave his country, and to retire into one of the *Hebrides*, where he lay conceal'd at a friend's who was his relation, and there continu'd in expectation of more favourable times.

Q. Did King *Edward* make any considerable conquests during his absence?

A. He possess'd himself of the most considerable strong holds; and having spent the winter at *Carlisle*, he left *Scotland*; *Robert Bruce* came out of the place where he had conceal'd himself, assembled the remains of his scatter'd army, and reinforc'd it with new levies. With these troops he attack'd the earl of *Pembroke*, who was King *Edward*'s lieutenant in *Scotland*, defeated and took him prisoner; and being master of the field, took several towns.

Q. How did *Edward* behave when he heard this news?

A. Being extremely exasperated against the *Scots*, he was determin'd to destroy that kingdom from sea to sea, but scarce was he arriv'd at *Carlisle*, where he had got together a very fine army, but he was seiz'd with a fit of sickness which put an end to his life.

Q. Was

Q. Was the King of *England* engag'd in no other wars?

A. Yes; against *France*, but with the same ill success; he lost all *Guienne*, which was restor'd to him by treaty; and notwithstanding he had form'd a powerful alliance against *Philip*, by making a confederacy with the earl of *Flanders*, *Adolphus* of *Nassau*, Emperor elect, *Albert* duke of *Austria*, the archbishop of *Cologne*, and several other Princes of *Germany*, the duke of *Brabant*, the earls of *Holland*, of *Juliers*, and of *Luxemburg*, yet he had the dissatisfaction to see it come to nothing, without the least advantage to himself, and to be of no other use than to heighten the glory of his antagonist.

Q. Describe King *Edward*.

A. He was extremely well-shap'd, and the head taller than the generality of men. He would have been perfect in his shape, had his legs, which were a little too long, been proportion'd to the rest of his body. Upon this account the surname of *Long-shanks* was given him. He was an excellent King, a good father, a formidable enemy, a brave captain; he was chaste, just, prudent, and moderate: So great was his affection for the *Holy-Land*, that he gave orders for the carrying of his heart thither after his death, and left thirty-two thousand pounds sterling for the maintenance of the holy sepulchre. In his expiring moments, he exhorted the King his son, to continue the war with *Scotland*, and added, *Let my bones be carry'd before you, for I am sure the rebels will never dare to stand the sight of them.*

Q. Where did *Edward* die?

A. At *Borough on the Sands*, a small town in *Cumberland*, the 7th of *July*, anno 1307, after having reign'd thirty-four years, seven months, and twenty days, and liv'd sixty-eight years. He had enjoy'd an almost uninterrupted state of health, was very strong and vigorous; but a dysentry, or bloody-flux, brought him to his end. His body was carry'd to *Waltham*, and from thence to *Westminster-abbey*, where it was crusted over with wax, and laid near that of King *Henry* his father.

Q. How many times was King *Edward* married?

A. Twice;

A. Twice; first to *Eleanor of Castile*, by whom he had four sons and nine daughters. *Edward II.* his successor, was the only son who surviv'd him. *Eleanor* his eldest daughter was married to *Henry duke de Bar*; *Joan* to *Gilbert Clare*, earl of *Gloucester*, and afterwards to *Ralph de Montbermer*; *Margaret* to *John duke of Brabant*; *Elizabeth* to *John earl of Holland*, and afterwards to *Humphry Bohun* earl of *Horsford*; *Berenguella*, *Alice*, *Blanch*, and *Beatrice* either died in their infancy, or were never married. By *Margaret of France*, King *Edward's* second wife, he had *Thomas* earl of *Norfolk*, and earl-marshal of *England*; *Edmund* earl of *Kent*, and *Eleanor*, who died in her infancy.

EDWARD II. XXXth King of England.

From 1307 to 1327.

Popes.		HENRY VII.	
CLEMENT V.	1305	FREDERIC III.	1314
JOHN XXII.	1316	<i>Kings of France.</i>	
<i>Emperor of the East.</i>		PHILIP IV.	1285
ANDRONICUS II.	1278	LEWIS X.	1314
<i>Emperors of the West.</i>		PHILIP V.	1316
ALBERT I.	1278	CHARLES IV.	1322

2. WHO succeeded Edward I?

A. *Edward II.*, his eldest son, by Queen *Eleanor of Castile*.

2. When did he begin his reign?

A. In 1307. He was one of the most handsome and best shap'd men of his age; and had so majestick an air, that it was impossible to look upon him, without having at the same time an esteem for him.

2. Did the beauties of his mind answer to those of his body?

A. No; he was neither a warrior, a politician, zealous

lous for his country's good, or passionate of glory; he had not a capacity for difficult affairs; had neither a genius sufficient to concert, or resolution to go through with them: and to these were wholly owing all the misfortunes of his reign.

Q. In what manner?

A. He devolv'd the whole administration of affairs upon his favourites.

Q. What did his father require of him in his dying moments?

A. To marry *Isabella of France*, daughter of *Philip le Bel*, who was the greatest beauty of her age.

Q. Did he obey him?

A. No sooner was he seated on the throne, than he went immediately to *Boulogne*, to conclude the marriage, which accordingly was solemnized in presence of four Kings, namely, *Philip*, King of *France*, *Lewis* King of *Navarre*, *Charles* King of *Sicily*, and the King of the *Romans*.

Q. How did he conduct himself in the beginning of his reign?

A. He was wholly at the devotion of *P. Gaveston*, a gentleman of *Gascony*, whom the King his father had banish'd. He entrusted him with the whole administration, and was so lavish of his bounties to him, that the *English* enrag'd at the weakness of the sovereign, and the haughtiness of the minister, forc'd King *Edward* to banish him in 1309.

Q. Did he not recal him?

A. Yes, the year following; however he was oblig'd to banish him a second time; but returning again in 1312, the whole kingdom rose up in arms, when he was besieg'd in *Scarborough*, taken prisoner, and from thence conducted to *Warwick-castle*, by the earl of that name, who caus'd him to be beheaded.

Q. Did his death put an end to the troubles?

A. The *English* addressing themselves to the King in person, they oblig'd him to ratify the privileges of *Magna Charta*, and the statute made by the parliament at *Oxford*, by which all foreigners were disabled from enjoying any place of trust in *England*.

Q. Was

Q. Was not the kingdom at that time troubled with foreign wars?

A. That of *Scotland* was still carrying on; and *Robert Bruce* had defeated the armies which had been sent against him; by which means he recover'd those strong holds which the *English* possess'd in his kingdom, and was actually besieging *Sterling*, when the confederates sheath'd their swords, and forbore all hostilities.

Q. Did not King *Edward* invade them in his turn?

A. He march'd at the head of an army of an hundred thousand men, in order to raise the siege of *Sterling*, but *Bruce* meeting with him near *Bannock-bourn*, with an army consisting of thirty thousand men, he defeated him entirely, and put him to flight, on *June 25, 1314.*

Q. Did not the *English* revenge themselves?

A. The name of *Robert Bruce* was now so terrible to them, that he conquer'd wherever he engag'd them; and recovering *Berwick*, he afterwards put all the *English* provinces, which were contiguous to his dominions, under contribution; secur'd his crown, and gave a general peace to his kingdom.

Q. Did King *Edward* enjoy a calm for any time in his court?

A. No; for in a parliament held in *London*, in 1312; the *English* nobles put *Hugh Spencer* the younger, near his person, in quality of chamberlain; who, by his father's counsel, soon gain'd so much credit, as to become the King's favourite and prime minister; which raising the jealousy of the barons, gave occasion to a great many disorders.

Q. How did they behave?

A. They complain'd that young *Spencer* was grown haughty, and treated them with too much pride; they resolv'd therefore to banish him, and for this purpose they form'd a confederacy, of which *Thomas* earl of *Lancaster*, son of *Edmund Crouchback*, and grandson of King *Henry III.* declar'd himself chief.

Q. Was this confederacy successful?

A. Young *Spencer* was at first oblig'd to leave the kingdom; and play'd the pyrate, especially against the

English ships. During his banishment, *Edward* recover'd several strong holds from the barons, recall'd the two *Spencers*, and carry'd on the progress of his arms against the barons with so much success, that the earl of *Lancaster* was taken there, with ninety-five barons or knights. The King beheaded the earl, and several other noble-men.

Q. Did these severities put a stop to the factions?

A. Yes; for a season; but the Queen being disgusted with the *Spencers*, resolv'd upon revenge. For this purpose she form'd a party, and openly levy'd a body of troops, in order to crush them.

Q. Where was she at that time?

A. At the court of *Charles the Fair* her brother, King of *France*, whether she had carry'd her son *Edward*, who did homage to his most christian majesty, for *Guienne* and *Ponthieu*.

Q. What did the Queen do?

A. She ratified the treaty made between the earl of *Hainault* and herself, and betroth'd young Prince *Edward* to Princess *Philippa*, that earl's daughter.

Q. What did she do afterwards?

A. The Queen obtain'd *William* earl of *Hainault* a powerful succour, under the command of earl *John* his brother.

Q. What success had she with these forces?

A. She landed in *England*, when the conspirators join'd her with the whole kingdom; and the king was so generally abandon'd, that he attempted to flee into *Ireland*, but being driven by contrary winds on the coast of *South-Wales*, he was oblig'd to conceal himself in *Neath-abbey*; having left the eldest *Spencer* in *Bristol*, where he was taken and hang'd. *Spencer* the son was also taken soon after, and hang'd at *Hereford*.

Q. What became of *Edward*?

A. He was imprison'd in the castle of *Kenselworth*; depos'd by the parliament, and his son was proclaim'd King. Deputies were afterwards sent to the King, to oblige him to resign his crown.

Q. Would the King consent to it?

A. The

A. The deputies had no sooner told him the resolutions of the assembly but he fainted away; and afterwards shedding a flood of tears, he submitted to every thing they required of him.

Q. What became of him afterwards?

A. *Henry of Lancaster*, his guardian, being suspected by the Queen, and her favourite *Mortimer*, with whom she held a secret correspondence, they caus'd him to be convey'd from the castle of *Kenelworth* to that of *Berkley*, where *Sir Thomas Gourney* and *Sir John Maltravers* gave him the most unworthy treatment; and afterwards put him to death in a very cruel manner: for a hot iron was thrust into his fundament, thro' a pipe made of horn, in order that it might leave no scar behind it, and in these cruel torments he expir'd in *October 1327*, after having reign'd twenty years.

Q. What became of his enemies?

A. The two wicked wretches who had perpetrated this murder, came to an untimely end; *Gourney* dy'd by the hands of the executioner, and *Maltravers* perish'd for want; *Edmund* earl of *Kent*, the late King's brother, was beheaded by the intrigues of the Queen, and of *Mortimer*. *Mortimer*, who seem'd to be the soul of the confederacy, was hang'd at *Tyburn*, for having accus'd the earl of *Kent* unjustly of embezzling the publick treasure; and the Queen was confin'd for life to the castle of *Rising*.

Q. What issue did King *Edward* leave behind him?

A. He had by *Isabella* of *France* his wife, two sons and as many daughters, viz. *Edward III.* his successor, and *John* who died in the flower of his youth. *Joan* his eldest daughter, was marry'd to *David* King of *Scots*; and *Eleanor*, his second, was wife to *Reynold* duke of *Gueldres*.

Q. What remarkable events happen'd in his reign?

A. The most dreadful earthquake that had ever been known in *Great-Britain*; and so dreadful a famine, that men devour'd one another; this famine lasted three years. And about this time the order of knights templars was abolish'd.

EDWARD III. XXXIst King of England,

From 1327 to 1377.

<i>Popes.</i>		<i>Emperors of the West.</i>	
JOHN XXII.	1316		
BENEDICT XII.	1334	FREDERIC III.	1314
CLEMENT VI.	1342	LEWIS IV.	1330
INNOCENT VI.	1352	CHARLES IV.	1347
URBAN V.	1362		
GREGORY XI.	1370		
<i>Emperors of the East.</i>		<i>Kings of France.</i>	
ANDRONICUS II.	1283	CHARLES IV.	1327
ANDRONICUS III.	1332	PHILIP VI.	1328
JOHN V.	1341	JOHN I.	1358
JOHN VI.	1355	CHARLES V.	1364

Q. WHO succeeded Edward II?

A. Edward III. his son, a youth of fourteen years of age, who succeeded him in 1327.

Q. What character is given of him?

A. That his bare aspect attracted respect and veneration. Gentle and beneficent towards people of virtue, he was inexorable towards the wicked. A friend to the poor, the widow, and the orphan, and to all the unfortunate in general, he took a pleasure in soothing their misfortunes. Tho' his valour was known and admir'd all the world over, he yet was never puffed up with pride upon that account. His subjects were very dear to him. The uninterrupted union which subsisted always between the Queen, his wife, and himself, augmented his felicity. In fine, he might have been consider'd as a perfect Prince, had not his ambition prompted him to break, in an odious manner, the peace he had concluded with the *Scots*.

Q. What were the first remarkable incidents in his reign?

A. He

A. He found it a difficult matter to crush the different factions which were form'd in the kingdom, in order to restore the King his father to the throne. *Robert Bruce* taking advantage of these troubles, sent into *England* an army, which, as it had been us'd to conquer, was the more formidable upon that account.

Q. Did this army gain any considerable advantages?

A. It made a great and barbarous havock on the *English* frontiers. *Edward* assembled an army of 60,000 men, and marched out, in order to fight 'em. The two armies continued in fight of one another for a fortnight, and then the *Scots* retir'd into their own country, after which *Edward* concluded a peace with them; and to make it the more lasting, *David*, eldest son of *Bruce*, and heir apparent of his crown, marry'd *Joan* King *Edward's* sister.

Q. Did not the war with *Scotland* break out afresh?

A. The lord *Beaumonts*, who, ever since his exile, resided in *France*, went, by order of the King of *England*, to *Edward Baliol*, son of King *John*; and as he made it appear, that he might easily conquer *Scotland*, this prevail'd with him to go into *England*; where being arriv'd, King *Edward* promis'd to raise a body of forces in order to oppose his brother-in-law, upon condition that he should become his vassal.

Q. What was the success of this expedition?

A. *Baliol* won four battles in a short time; and oblig'd young *David*, and the Queen his consort, to retire into *France*; *Baliol* paid homage to *Edward* for his crown, after which *Edward* threw off the mask, besieg'd and took *Berwick*, and entirely defeated the regent, whom *David* had left in *Scotland*.

Q. Were the *Scots* subdu'd by this victory?

A. No; a body of malecontents drove away *Baliol*, who fled to *Edward*. The King rais'd an army, conquer'd the greatest part of *Scotland*, and left the government of it to the earl of *Athol*. This earl was afterwards kill'd in a battle he lost.

Q. Did not the *Scots* rise?

A. *Robert Stewart*, who was afterwards King of *Scotland*,

land, observing that *King Edward* was pretty much taken up in his wars with *France*, caus'd *David II.* to be recall'd, who accordingly return'd into *Scotland* with a choice body of troops, march'd into *Northumberland*, pierc'd as far as *Durham*, which he took, and put all its inhabitants to the sword; and was forming the siege of the castle of *Werk*, belonging to the countess of *Salisbury*, who was herself in it; *David* was vigorously repuls'd from it, and he desisted from his enterprize, upon the news that the *King of England* was advancing towards him.

Q. Did *Edward* stay any time before this castle?

A. He paid a visit to the countess of *Salisbury*, which gave occasion to some historians to declare, that he was passionately in love with her. It would be easy to invalidate what they have advanc'd without foundation; but as this passion, whether true or false, was not productive of any remarkable event, 'twould be needless to make any further mention of it. A little after *Edward* made a truce for two years with *David*.

Q. In what manner did this war end?

A. *Philip* engag'd *David* to make an incursion into *England*, which he accordingly did with an army of 30000 men, and advanc'd as far as *Durham*. *Queen Philippa* undertook to repulse the enemy, and for this purpose she put herself at the head of her army, fought the *King of Scots*, who receiv'd three wounds, was taken prisoner, and had 20000 of his men kill'd upon the spot; he was afterwards confin'd in the tower of *London*, but recover'd his liberty by a treaty, which put an end to this war.

Q. Upon what occasion did *King Edward* make war with *France*?

A. *Charles IV.* surnam'd *the Fair*, *King of France*, dying without male-issue, *Philip de Valois*, his cousin, succeeded him, by virtue of the *Salick* law, which at the same time excluded *King Edward* from the succession, claim'd by him in right of the *Queen* his mother, daughter of *Philip the Fair*, and sister of *Charles the Fair*, to whom *Philip de Valois* was only cousin.

Q. Was this a just occasion?

A. The

A. The *Salick-Law* excludes the females and their descendants from the crown; but 'tis to be observ'd, that this law was not admirted before *Philip the Long*, in prejudice of *Joan* daughter of *Hutin*. Besides, several lords would not admit the validity of it. The duke of *Burgundy* even enter'd a protest against it, in presence of the peers, in defence of the rights of *Joan*, to whom he pretended the crown belong'd, by the law of nature, as well as of nations. Hence 'tis manifest, that this law was not consider'd as incontrovertible. *Philip the Long* being dead, *Charles the Fair* ascended the throne in prejudice of his nieces. From that time no one has pretended to dispute the authority of the *Salick Law*. Nevertheless *Edward* assum'd the title of King of *France*, and 'tis still bore by his successors.

2. Did *Edward* pay homage to *Philip*?

A. Yes; but 'twas with extreme reluctance, and not till after *Philip* had cited him for that purpose; and being still a minor, he was oblig'd to submit to it. For this purpose, he went to *Amiens* with a splendid equipage, and a train of a thousand horsemen. He there paid homage to *Philip* in presence of the Kings of *Navarre*, *Majorca*, and *Bohemia*, for *Guienne* and the earldom of *Ponthieu*. But he had before privately protested against that homage.

2. What was the consequence of these wars?

A. They were fatal to *France*, where *Edward* made dreadful havock, and carry'd his victorious arms to the very gates of *Paris*; he afterwards on *Saturday* the 26th of *August*, 1346, gain'd the famous victory of *Cressy* over *Philip*. *Edward* Prince of *Wales*, surnam'd the *Black Prince*, being but sixteen years of age, and who then made his first campaign, had the honour of that victory. The *French* sustain'd a great loss on this occasion. Among the slain were the King of *Bohemia*, who was blind, and who died, fighting for *France*, as he had desir'd; the duke of *Alençon* King *Philip's* brother, the duke of *Lorraine*, the earl of *Flanders*, the earl of *Blois*, fifteen other noblemen of the greatest distinction, 1200 knights, and upwards of 80 standards. Historians tell us, that the *English* first made use of cannon in this memorable battle,

battle, and that the *French* were not as yet acquainted with it. The success of this battle is partly ascrib'd to the surprize which the novelty of this artillery occasion'd.

Q. Did King *Edward* gain any considerable advantage by this victory?

A. He besieg'd *Calais*, and took it after a year's siege. *Philip* march'd with an army of 150000 men, in order to succour that place; but *Edward* was so strongly entrench'd, that there was no possibility even to attack him.

Q. In what manner was it taken?

A. The besieg'd were starv'd out; for when they capitulated, the fortification were as entire as the first day of the siege.

Q. Did this monarch gain no other advantages over *France*?

A. *Edward* Prince of *Wales* having made incursions up to the gates of *Bourges*, with an army of 12000 men, *John*, son and successor of *Philip*, having assembled an army of 60000 men, came up with him near *Poitiers*, at a place call'd *Mauvertuis*, and oblig'd him to fight.

Q. What was the event of this battle?

A. Very glorious for the Prince of *Wales*, who entirely routed the *French*; took King *John*, and *Philip* his fourth son prisoners; and kill'd about 6000 of the *French*, amongst which were the duke of *Bourbon*; and the constable of *France*; upwards of fifty of the greatest noblemen of the kingdom, and 800 gentlemen. The Prince of *Wales* made himself be admir'd; by the modest and generous treatment he bestow'd on the captive King. His father King *Edward* treated him with great generosity. But King *Edward* having resolv'd to carry his arms into *France*, imprison'd King *John* in the tower of *London*.

Q. Did not King *Edward*, upon this victory, flatter himself with the conquest of *France*?

A. Yes; and what confirm'd him still more in it, was the revolt of *Charles le Mauvais*, King of *Navarre*.

Q. Was he successful in it?

A. No; for *Charles V.* at that time Dauphin, disconcerted all the great projects he had form'd; threw the
King

King of *Navarre* into prison, and dispos'd every thing so happily, that the King of *England*, after having unsuccessfully attempted the siege of *Rheims*; and laid waste *France* to the very gates of *Paris*; not being able to draw him out of the walls of it, he consented to a peace.

Q. Where, and on what conditions was it concluded?

A. In the village of *Bretigny*. King *John* was to pay three millions of crowns of gold for his ransom, and resign'd to the *English* the entire sovereignty of *Guienne*, *Saintonge*, *Angoumois*, *Agenois*, *Perigord*, *Rouerge*, *Limosin*, *Quercy*, the earldoms of *Guines*, of *Ponthieu*, and of *Poitou*, *Boulogne* and *Calais*. I forbear to mention the remaining articles of the peace, which were sign'd the eighth of *May*, 1360.

Q. Was it executed?

A. Yes; King *John* was set at liberty, after having been detain'd four years, one month, and five days; he observ'd the most minute articles of the treaty, notwithstanding the offence he thereby gave to his subjects, and even went into *England*, in order to settle certain controverted points between him and King *Edward*, and dy'd there the eighth of *April*, 1364.

Q. Did *Charles V.* observe the articles of peace as faithfully?

A. No; for he made war upon King *Edward*, which prov'd as fatal to that King, as the foregoing had been advantageous; for this wise monarch vanquish'd him in several battles, tho' he did not once stir out of his palace, and drove them out of most of the strong holds they possess'd in *France*, the city of *Calais* excepted.

Q. Was King *Edward* engag'd in no other wars?

A. He espoused the interest of his son-in-law *John* earl of *Monfort*, against *Charles* of *Blois*; and tho' he was not so happy as to put an end to that war, when he went over into *Bretagne*, he yet had the satisfaction to see it concluded agreeably to his wishes; for *Charles* lost this victory, together with his dukedom, and his life, in the battle of *Avrai*, fought the twenty-ninth of *September*, 1364.

Q. What

Q. What other remarkable action did *Edward* perform?

A. The *English* merchants having complain'd to him, concerning certain *Spanish* ships which infested the coasts, and did them very great prejudice, he promis'd to check them. For this purpose having assembled such of his ships as were equipp'd for his purpose, he himself gave chase to the pirates, attack'd 'em, defeated them, took twenty-six of their ships, sunk several of them, and dispers'd all the rest. This engagement, tho' not a very important one, appear'd so glorious to *Edward*, that he caus'd gold coin to be struck, in which he was represented on board a ship (sword in hand) in order to perpetuate the memory of it.

Q. What is particularly ascrib'd to *Edward*?

A. The institution of the Order of the *Garter*, the most illustrious in *England*, nay in the whole world.

Q. Is the occasion of it known?

A. 'Tis pretended that it was occasion'd by the countess of *Salisbury's* garter, which, falling from her leg, the King took it up in a ball, as that lady was dancing; but as she imagin'd he had some other design in view; and having discover'd her surprize to him upon that account, the King said to her to justify himself, *Dishonour, or evil, to that man who thinks ill of it*; and afterwards added, *Many a man has laugh'd at the Garter, who will think it a great honour to wear such an one*. 'Tis added, that in remembrance of this accident, he instituted the Order of the *Garter*, to which he gave as a motto the words he had spoke to the countess.

Q. Pray give some account of his family?

A. He had by *Philippa* of *Hainault*, *Edward* Prince of *Wales*, surnam'd the *Black Prince*, by the *English* (because he wore black armour;) the most valiant hero of his age: and his father bestowing on him the government of his foreign dominions, he signaliz'd himself therein by a thousand illustrious actions; he went into *Spain*, in order to succour *Peter the cruel*, and beat *Henry Trastamare*, who disputed the crown with him; and after having gain'd immortal glory, died in the flower

of

of his age, *June 8th 1376*, aged forty-six years, regretted by the whole *English* nation. He possess'd all the virtues in an eminent degree. His experience as a general, was as great as his valour, as a soldier; brave without ferocity; haughty in combat, but very affable in conversation, and so modest, that he created admiration. He was ever submissive and obedient to the King his father, to whom he never gave the least subject of discontent. Generous, and liberal, he made it his greatest pleasure to reward merit wheresoever he found it. He possess'd all the qualities that constitute the true hero. The parliament assisted at his funeral.

Q. Was he ever married?

A. Yes; with *Joan* his cousin, daughter of *Edmund* earl of *Kent*, beheaded at the beginning of this reign, as has been already observ'd, widow of *Thomas* earl of *Holland*: the King his father thought it but just, in consideration of the great services the Prince had done him, to permit him to marry her, he being passionately in love with her; and so exquisite was her beauty, that she was generally call'd, *The beautiful Joan*.

Q. Had he any children by her?

A. *Edward* who died at seven years of age, and *Richard*, who succeeded to the crown of *England*.

Q. Who are the other children of King *Edward III*?

A. He had twelve in all by his Queen, whereof some dy'd before him; *William* of *Hatfield*; *Lionel*, duke of *Clarence*; *John* of *Gaunt* duke of *Lancaster*, was marry'd twice in his father's life-time, and had children of whom I shall have occasion to speak in the succeeding reigns; *Edmund* duke of *York*; *William* of *Windsor* died young; *Thomas* duke of *Gloucester*; and four daughters, viz. *Isabella*, who married the earl of *Soissons*; *Joan*, betroth'd to a Prince of *Castile*, died in her way to *Spain*, where she was going to consummate her marriage; *Blanche*, who liv'd but a few years; *Mary*, who marry'd the duke of *Bretagne*, and *Margaret* wife to *John Hastings*, earl of *Pembroke*.

Q. Of what distemper did *Edward III.* die?

A. Of the shingles, in his palace at *Sheen*, now call'd *Richmond*, seated on the river *Thames*, the twenty-first of *June*, 1377, in the sixty-fifth year of his age, and the fifty-first of his reign. Before he left the world, he had the mortification to see the world leave him. *Alice*, his favourite, when she saw him near his end, seiz'd the most precious things she could meet with; tore the ring from his finger, and went away. His courtiers and chaplains gave him no less tokens of their ingratitude.

Q. Did not *John Wickliff* live under this reign?

A. Yes; and he being convinc'd of the falseness of the doctrine of the real presence, pilgrimages, purgatory, &c. inveigh'd in all his sermons against those doctrines, as also against the clergy; for which being cited to appear before the bishop of *London*, it prov'd the occasion of great tumults. *Wickliff* was a man of great piety and learning, but in an assembly held at *Oxford*, his tenets were solemnly condemn'd; however, he escap'd the malice of his enemies, and dy'd peaceably in his parish of *Lutterworth*, in 1384. He is justly consider'd as one of the most eminent reformers of the church.

RICHARD II. XXXII^d King of England.

From 1377 to 1399.

<i>Popes.</i>		<i>Emperors of the West.</i>	
GREGORY XI.	1370	CHARLES IV.	1347
URBAN VI.	1378	WENCESLAUS	1378
BONIFACE IX.	1389		
<i>Emperors of the East.</i>		<i>Kings of France.</i>	
JOHN VI.	1355	CHARLES V.	1364
EMANUEL II.	1391	CHARLES VI.	1380

2. WHO succeeded King Edward III?

A. Richard II. his grandson, born at Bourdeaux the sixth of January 1366, declar'd Prince of Wales in 1377, and crown'd King the sixteenth of July, of the same year, twenty-four days after Edward's death, at eleven years of age. 'Tis at this coronation that historians first mention the champion's coming into Westminster-hall, and giving his challenge; however it is certain that it is of greater antiquity.

2. Who govern'd the kingdom during his minority?

A. The duke of Lancaster, the earl of Cambridge, afterwards duke of York, and the duke of Gloucester, his uncles; who being ambitious of preserving the sovereign authority in their own hands, were continually exclaiming against his government, and spiring up the people against his favourites.

2. Who were his chief favourites?

A. Robert de Vere, earl of Oxford; whom Richard created marquiss of Dublin, and duke of Ireland. Alexander Nevil, archbishop of York; Michael de la Pole, son to a merchant of London, and judge Tresilian, who was never at a loss to find out reasons, to enforce whatever might be agreeable to the King's inclinations.

2. What memorable action happen'd in the beginning of his reign?

A. The Scots defeated the *English* army which was followed by a three years truce. The *French* scour'd the *English* coasts, after which *Richard* carry'd his arms into *France*, but without success. This war was ended by concluding a truce for twenty-eight years, and the marriage of *Isabel* daughter of *Charles VI.* with *Richard*.

Q. Had he no troubles during his reign?

A. Yes; for not to mention those which the followers of *Wickliff* rais'd in *London* and in other places, the dukes his uncles, (him of *Gloucester* in particular) were almost continually in arms against him.

Q. What reasons did those Princes give for acting in this manner?

A. The uneasiness they felt, to see persons of obscure birth in those seats which they ought to have held in the council: not to mention that the favourites had secretly conspir'd to take away their lives.

Q. What was the result of these factions?

A. They brought the kingdom to the brink of ruin, and occasion'd the death of several noblemen; for the king having notice of the secret practises which the duke of *Gloucester* was carrying on against him, caused him to be smother'd at *Calais* where he had imprison'd him; *Richard Fitz-Alan* earl of *Arundel* was beheaded; *Thomas Beauchamp* earl of *Warwick* was condemn'd to perpetual exile in the isle of man, and *Henry* duke of *Hereford* was banish'd the kingdom.

Q. Did this put a stop to the insurrections?

A. No; for the duke of *Hereford*, now duke of *Lancaster* by the death of his father, who was withdrawn to the court of *Charles VI.* was recall'd by the *English* nobility, in order to head the malecontents, who were resolv'd to bear no longer with the King's lavishness and profusion.

Q. Had *Lancaster* the courage to head them?

A. The duke of *Bretagne* having furnish'd him with troops and ships, he set out from *Vannes*, in the beginning of *July*, and arriv'd safe in *England*, very near a place call'd *Ravensthorpe* in *Yorkshire*, where he was receiv'd like an angel who was come to deliver them.

Q. Was not he oppos'd?

A. *Richard*

A. Richard was then in Ireland, to subject the Irish who had rebell'd; and *Edmund* duke of York, at that time regent, seeing himself universally abandon'd, and being unable to levy any forces, retir'd to his own palace, when he found there was no possibility of stemming the torrent.

Q. What happen'd after this?

A. Richard being return'd from Ireland, was seiz'd and imprison'd in the castle of *Flint*, near *Chester*; and afterwards carry'd to *London*, where the duke had assembled a parliament, who brought the King to his trial, and depos'd him, by an act made the 30th of September, 1399, in the twenty-second year of the reign of this unhappy Prince.

Q. Of what was he accus'd?

A. Of having oppress'd his subjects with heavy taxes; squander'd away his revenues to very ill purpose; enrich'd his favourites with the blood of his people; devolv'd upon them the whole administration, and put the duke of *Gloucester* his uncle, to death, without judging him, according to the laws of the country. For having ruin'd a great number of his subjects, and put to death a great many persons.

Q. What became of this unfortunate Prince afterwards?

A. He was imprison'd in *Pontefract* castle in *Yorkshire*. *Henry* sent eight men, headed by *Sir Piers Exton*. Richard resolv'd to sell his life as dear as possible, accordingly he forc'd a battle-ax from one of those men, who had all rush'd in upon him, and defended himself so vigorously, that he kill'd four of them. But happening at last to come near *Exton*, who had got upon a chair, the wretch struck him so furious a blow on the head with a club, that he fell'd him dead at his feet. Thus died this unfortunate Prince, at thirty-three years of age.

Q. Was he ever marry'd?

A. Yes, twice; first to *Anne* of *Luxemburgh*, sister to the Emperor *Wenceslaus*, and afterwards to *Isabella* of *France*, daughter of *Charles VI*; but had no issue by either.

Q. What character do historians give of him?

L 3

A. That

A. That he was the most handsome monarch in the world; of an indifferent genius, kind, and magnificent; but soft, timid, and too much devoted to his favourites.

Q. Did not *Wat Tyler* and *Jack Straw* occasion great disturbances?

A. Yes; and it was owing to the heavy burthens and oppressions wherewith *Richard* vex'd the people, who rose in several parts of *England*; and a collector of the poll-tax having demanded it of *Wat Tyler* for one of his daughters, the father asserted that she was under the age appointed by law. The collector attempting to satisfy himself in this particular, in a way not decent, *Tyler* was so much incens'd at it, that he beat out his brains with an hammer; after which, gathering together an hundred thousand men, they set themselves in battle array on *Black-heath*, whence they marched to *London*, where they committed great outrages: but upon a pardon being offer'd them, a great number return'd home; but thirty thousand went to meet the King in *Smithfield*, when *Wat Tyler* made such extravagant proposals, that *Richard* did not know what answer to make him. *Tyler* lifted up his sword now and then by way of threatening the King, which exasperated *Walworth*, lord-mayor of *London*, so much, that he struck the rebel so furious a blow with his sword on his head, that he fell dead at his feet. *Jack Straw*, his companion, who had excited the inhabitants of *Essex* to take up arms, was executed. The rest of the rebels were also oblig'd to submit themselves.

HOUSE of LANCASTER.

HENRY IV. *surnam'd of Bolinbroke,*
XXXIII^a King of England.

From 1399 to 1413.

Popes.

BONIFACE IX. 1389
INNOCENT VII. 1404
GREGORY XII. 1406
ALEXANDER V. 1408
JOHN XXIII. 1410

Emperor of the East.

EMANUEL II.

Emperors of the West.

WENCESLAUS. 1378
ROBERT LE PET. 1400
SIGISMUND 1410

King of France.

CHARLES VI. 1380

2. AFTER the deposing of *Richard II.* on whose head was the crown of *England* set?

A. On that of *Henry of Lancaster*, surnam'd of *Bolingbroke*, the place of his birth. He began to reign the 30th of *September* 1399.

2. Whose son was he?

A. Of *John of Gaunt*, (the place of his birth) third son of *Edward III.*

2. What character had that Prince?

A. His chief characteristic was, an extreme jealousy for that crown, which he had acquir'd by such methods as were not universally approv'd. The murder of *Richard II.* will be an eternal blot to his memory, altho' it should even be possible to justify his usurpation of the crown. By the way, he perform'd very few actions, which

which can merit any encomium. He was the first King who burnt the *Lollards*, that is, those who follow'd the opinions of *Wickliff*. *William Sawtre* was the first martyr for this cause. He was burnt alive.

Q. Did he sit quietly upon his throne?

A. No; his reign was a continual series of revolutions, which fill'd *England* with blood and misery: he himself indeed always triumph'd over them; but the great number of persons of quality whom he put to death for having fomented these revolutions, got him the appellation of *Cruel*.

Q. Were not his subjects supported by foreign princes?

A. The *Scots* assisted *Percy* earl of *Northumberland*, but after having been defeated in several battles, they were oblig'd to forbear hostilities. They even lost their prince *James*, whom King *Robert* his father was sending into *France*. This young Prince fell into the hands of *Henry*, who confin'd him in the *Tower of London*. The *French* supported the famous *Owen Glendour*, who had engag'd the *Welsh* to rise, and taken the title of Prince of that country, where he maintain'd himself a considerable time, with extreme good fortune. *Henry* march'd against *Glendour*, who retir'd to *Snowden-hill*. The weather grew on a sudden so stormy, that *Henry* was forc'd to march away. These storms were so extraordinary in this season, that the *English* were persuaded *Glendour* had made a contract with the devil, to prevent the ruin of his country. Some time after, *Glendour* spent the rest of his days in an unknown place.

Q. Did the *French* only furnish the *English* malecontents with forces?

A. They levied considerable armies, and frequently invaded *Guienne*, and possess'd themselves of several towns. They also endeavour'd to take *Calais*, but with very little success; for the intestine divisions, which at that time rag'd in *France*, did not permit them to keep up an army on foot, against a foreign enemy, for any considerable time.

Q. Did not *Henry* foment these divisions of the *French*?

A. He

A. He assisted the duke of Orleans with troops; which being render'd useless by the peace that was afterwards concluded at *Bourges*, and not paid by those who had employ'd them, they made dreadful havock in *Normandy*, *Touraine*, *Maine*, and *Anjou*.

Q. Of what disease did *Henry* die?

A. *Mezeray* says that it was of a leprosy. After having been tormented three months with it, it at last brought him to his end, on the 20th of *March*, anno 1413, the fourteenth of his reign, and in the forty-sixth year of his age, in the *Jerusalem-Chamber*, at the abbey of *Westminster*, according to a prophecy which had been made him. Others say, that he died of an apoplexy.

Q. Had he ever been married?

A. Twice; first to *Mary de Bohun*, daughter of *Humphrey* earl of *Hereford*; afterwards to *Joan of Navarre*, widow of *John V.* duke of *Bretagne*, by whom he had no issue.

Q. Had he any children by his first wife?

A. He had six, viz. *Henry V.* who succeeded him, *Thomas* duke of *Clarence*, *John* duke of *Bedford*, *Humphrey* duke of *Gloucester*; and two daughters, namely, *Blanch* married to *Lewis Barbatus* Elector Palatine of the *Rhine*; and *Philippa* wife of *Erit*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*.

Q. What eminent men flourish'd under his reign?

A. The famous *Robert Knolles*, who had been governour of *Guienne*, and greatly signaliz'd himself under *Edward III.* *William* of *Wickham*, bishop of *Winchester*, *Sir Richard Whittington* Mayor of *London*, were distinguish'd by their works of charity, and the foundations they made, so beneficial to the publick. It was also famous for *Geofrey Chaucer* and *John Gower*, both poets, who are generally look'd upon as the first reformers of the *English* language. In the reign of King *Henry*, the city of *London* was afflicted with a dreadful plague, which swept away above 30000 of its inhabitants.

HENRY V. surnam'd of Monmouth, XXXIVth King of England.

From 1413 to 1422.

Popes.

Emperor of the West.

JOHN XXIII.

1410

SIGISMUND

1410

MARTIN V.

1417

Emperor of the East.

Kings of France.

EMANUEL II.

1391

CHARLES VI. & VII. 1380

2. **W**HO succeeded Henry IV?

A. Henry V. his eldest son, born in 1388, at Monmouth, and declar'd Prince of Wales, that is, heir apparent of the crown of England in 1399.

2. When did he begin his reign?

A. In 1413.

2. Describe me the person and qualities of this monarch?

A. He was well-shap'd, and warlike; an experienc'd soldier, and a good politician; had a very extensive and elevated genius, ever fruitful in great projects; to which we must add, that he laid all his schemes so justly, that they never fail'd of success. A great friend to justice, he obey'd its dictates himself, and made others obey it. He was devout without ostentation, and a great protector of the church and clergy. He is indeed blam'd for his unbounded ambition; of not having been very liberal, and of being a little inclin'd to cruelty. He had led a very dissolute life under his father.

2. What were the pretensions of this Prince with regard to France?

A. He laid claim to Normandy, Anjou, Maine, and Poitou; and asserted the right which Edward III. had laid to the crown of France.

2. What methods did he first employ for that purpose?

A. That

A. That of negotiation; and accordingly address'd himself to *Charles VI.* King of *France*, in order to obtain a resignation of the abovementioned provinces in his favour; but this not succeeding, he declar'd war against that monarch.

Q. Where did he first begin it?

A. He landed an army at *Havre de Grace* in *Normandy*, the 21st of *August* 1415; besieg'd *Harfleur*, which he took after a vigorous resistance, and peopled with *English*. During the siege above half his forces were either cut to pieces by the *French*, or died by various diseases.

Q. Where did he go afterwards?

A. He march'd thro' *Caux*, cross'd the *Somme* on the 19th of *October*, and march'd on till he came to the castle of *Agincourt*, where he defeated the *French* army, that was four times as numerous as his own, which advanc'd to give him battle, the 25th of *October* the same year: kill'd several *French* Princes and nobleman, and a great number of common soldiers, about 10,000 men in all. In the heat of the action he was vigorously attack'd by the duke of *Alençon*, who, with one blow of his ax, struck off half the crown which he wore upon his helmet. Some historians affirm, that the *English* lost only the duke of *York*, the earl of *Suffolk*, four knights, one squire, and twenty-eight private men. But other historians speak with greater probability, in saying that the *English* lost 400 men.

Q. Did *Henry* content himself with this victory?

A. After his fleet had beat that of *France* in an engagement in the beginning of the following year, he made a descent upon *Normandy*, in *July* 1417, and siez'd upon several cities in that province; spent the winter there, and the spring following set out in order to renew his conquests.

Q. What important cities did he take?

A. *Cherbourg* and *Roan*, in 1418, the latter sustain'd a siege with as great bravery as ever was known; for the inhabitants of that great city defended themselves to the last; and would never have been overcome, had they not been prey'd upon by famine, which was so extreme,

that

that they were forc'd to feed upon leather, on all kinds of animals, and the most loathsome things.

Q. Did not the *French* endeavour to give them a speedy succour?

A. The dauphin was very desirous to do it, but his army was not strong enough to engage the enemy; he had solicited the duke of *Burgundy* to join his forces with his, but to no purpose; for the duke, who pretended to have taken up arms with the sole view of easing the people, made no other use of them than to awe the King's forces, and facilitate the conquests of their common enemy. So that *Roan*, after sustaining a long siege, was oblig'd to surrender.

Q. Did *Henry* stop here?

A. He conquer'd the rest of *Normandy* before the end of the year 1419; 215 years since the time that *Philip Augustus* had dispossessed King *John* of it, and united it to his own demesnes.

Q. Did fortune still continue favourable to him?

A. He took *Pontoise* by escalado, and the whole territory of *Vexin* in *Normandy*; however the advantage he here gain'd, was vastly inferior to that which he obtain'd by the treaty concluded at *Troyes* in *Champagne*, the 20th of May, 1420.

Q. Wherein was this treaty so advantageous to *England*?

A. *Charles VI.* consented, that the Princess *Catherine* his daughter, should marry *Henry*: recogniz'd him sole heir to his crown, in prejudice of the Dauphin his son; and at the same time had him declar'd regent of the kingdom.

Q. Was this treaty duly observ'd?

A. *Henry* married the Princess, and was recogniz'd regent, and in that quality put a garrison in *Paris*, and in several more of the chief cities of the kingdom; and notwithstanding that the Dauphin strongly oppos'd his conquests; and that his troops had even defeated a body of horse, and kill'd the duke of *Clarence*, brother to King *Henry*, at *Baugé*, the 3^d of April, 1421, 'tis to be presum'd that *Henry* would have maintain'd the declaration which his father-in-law had made, by force of arms,

arms, if he had not been carry'd off by a dysentery in *Vincennes*, the 31st of *August* 1422, in the thirty-fourth year of his age, after a triumphant and glorious reign of nine years and five months.

Q. Did *Charles* VI. survive his son-in-law for any time?

A. Only fifty-five days; and his death gave a new turn to the *English* affairs.

Q. Was *Henry* an enemy to the *Lollards*?

A. Yes; Sir *John Oldcastle*, lord *Cobham*, one of the chief of'em, was seiz'd by his order, and imprison'd in the tower, whence he made his escape; but being afterwards retaken, he was hang'd up at the waist, by a chain, and burnt alive. He died with wonderful resolution. He was the first among the nobility who suffer'd for the sake of religion.

Q. Did *Henry* leave any issue?

A. Only one son, viz. *Henry* VI. whom he had by *Catharine* his wife; who notwithstanding she was the widow of so great a Prince, and descended from the most illustrious houses in *Europe*, marry'd some time after a *Welsh* gentleman call'd *Owen Tudor*, at which both the *English* and *French* were very much offended. 'Tis pretended that this gentleman was descended from the antient Kings of *Wales*: but I don't know whether this descent be well prov'd. By him she had three sons, viz. *Edmund*, *Gasper*, and *Owen*. The eldest marry'd *Margaret*, only daughter of *John Beaufort*, duke of *Somerset*, grandson of *John* of *Gaunt*, duke of *Lancaster*, and of *Catherine* Roet, his third wife. He was father to *Henry* VII. as will be shewn in the sequel.

HENRY VI. *surnam'd of Windsor,* XXXVth King of England.

From 1422 to 1461.

<i>Popes.</i>		<i>CONSTANTINE III. and last</i>	
MARTIN V.	1417	<i>Emperor.</i>	1448
EUGENIUS IV.	1431	<i>Emperors of the West.</i>	
NICHOLAS V.	1447	SIGISMUND	1410
CALIXTUS III.	1455	ALBERT II.	1438
PIUS II.	1458	FREDERIC IV.	1440
<i>Emperors of the East.</i>		<i>Kings of France.</i>	
EMANUEL II.	1391	CHARLES VII.	1422
JOHN VII.	1426	LEWIS XI.	1440

Q. WHO succeeded *Henry V*?
A. *Henry VI.* his son, being but nine months old.

Q. Where was this Prince born?

A. At *Windsor*, December 6th, 1421: the year following he succeeded his father, and after the death of *Charles VI.* was recogniz'd King of *France*, by above half that kingdom. He was dethron'd in 1461, but recover'd the crown in 1471, and in 1472, lost it together with his life.

Q. What is the character of *Henry VI*?

A. He was a good, just, chaste, temperate, and pious Prince; and wholly resign'd himself to the sovereign dispenser of kingdoms; he bore with uncommon patience all the sinister accidents of life. His great, and only defect was, a kind of natural imbecillity, which render'd him incapable of governing without the assistance of others.

Q. Who was entrusted with the administration during the minority of *Henry VI*?

A. *John*

A. John duke of Bedford was made protector, and in his absence *Humphrey duke of Gloucester*; and *Thomas Beaufort duke of Exeter*, and the bishop of *Winchester*, were entrusted with the Prince's education.

Q. In what state were this Prince's dominions, upon his accession?

A. England and Ireland enjoy'd a profound peace; but *Charles VII.* exerted himself with the utmost vigour, in order to support himself upon the throne of *France*.

Q. Was he successful?

A. No; for he lost the battles of *Crevant* and *Verneuil*. A body of *English* troops were indeed defeated at *Gravelle* by his generals; but this success was of no advantage to him; and the *English* dispossest him of so many strong holds, that the only title they now bestow'd upon him was that of the *Little King of Bourges*: and we may reasonably presume, that they would soon have drove him on the other side the *Loire*, had they taken *Orleans*.

Q. Did they lay siege to it?

A. Yes; they invested it the 12th of *October*, 1428; and after having routed the several bodies of men that were sent to throw provisions into it, it was look'd upon as lost, when *Joan of Arc*, a young shepherdess, of twenty-one years of age, born in the village of *Domremy* in *Lorraine*, came to *Chinon*, where King *Charles* then kept his court, and told him that she was expressly sent by heaven, in order to raise the siege of *Orleans*; and afterwards to carry him to *Rheims*, and cause him to be crown'd in that city.

Q. Was any credit given to what she said?

A. The King having committed her to the examination of some divines, they judg'd, (on what foundation I know not) that she had a call from heaven. On this presumption, *Charles* gave the maid of *Orleans*, (for by this name she is known in history) a strong body of forces, who, putting herself at their head, entirely discomfited the *English*, enter'd *Orleans*; after which she cut upwards of 8000 men to pieces, (according to the

French historians, tho' the *English* writers mention but 600) at the storming of several forts, which the *English* generals had built about this city; and forc'd the *English* to raise the siege with great dishonour, on the 12th of *May*, 1429. But this sudden defeat of the *English* is imputed to the strange frenzy and surprize with which they were seiz'd, in the thoughts that they were to encounter a witch.

Q. Did not the maid of *Orleans* continue her conquests?

A. Yes; she pursu'd the enemy close, and dispossest them of *Gergeau*, *Melun*, *Baugenci*, *Troye*, and *Chalons*; she likewise defeated them at *Patay* in *Beauce*, and took the valiant *Talbot*, their general, prisoner: after which she carry'd *Charles* to *Rheims*, took all the cities that lay in her way, and was equally successful in her return; and she animated the *French* to such a degree, that they were now become as formidable to the *English*, as the latter had formerly been to the *French*, and routed them in all places where-ever they dar'd to wait their coming up.

Q. What became of this heroine afterwards?

A. She was taken prisoner in a sally made upon the *English* in the siege of *Compiègne*, on the 25th of *May*, 1430, after which they carried her to *Roan*, where the *English* ministers condemn'd and burnt her for a witch, in the old market-place of *Roan*, the 30th of *May*, 1431; however, her death did not occasion the least change in the affairs of *France*, as her enemies had at first imagin'd.

Q. What measures did the duke of *Bedford* then take in order to put a stop to their conquests?

A. Being of opinion that such of the *French* as adher'd to King *Henry*, would have a stronger affection for him, if he were crown'd King of *France*, he caus'd him to go to *Paris*, where the ceremony of his coronation was perform'd in the church of our Lady, the 17th of *December*, 1430.

Q. What further measures did he take?

A. He

A. He rais'd forces in *England* and *Ireland*, and with those reinforc'd his army; but the duke of *Burgundy* being reconciled with *Charles VII.* and declaring for him after the peace was concluded at *Arras*; and the inhabitants of *Paris* having paid allegiance to that King the year following, the *English* lost ground every day; and to compleat their misfortunes, they lost the duke of *Bedford*, a man of great bravery and experience, and very much belov'd by the soldiery.

Q. Who succeeded him in the regency?

A. *Richard* duke of *York*, who was afterwards succeeded by *Edmund Beaufort* earl of *Somerset*; but the latter lost all that the *English* still possess'd in *France*, by his refusing to surrender *Fougeres*, which *Francis de Surtiennes*, surnam'd of *Arragon*, had surpriz'd during the treaty.

Q. In what manner was it lost?

A. All *Normandy* was conquer'd in 1450, and *Guienne* in 1451, after having been subject to the *English* for upwards of 300 years.

Q. Did not the inhabitants of this province rise up in arms?

A. The noblemen of that country recall'd the lord *Talbot*, the first earl of *Shrewsbury*, an *English* general, who was receiv'd into *Bordeaux* and certain other cities; but having been defeated and kill'd near *Castillon*, in 1453, every thing submitted to the *French*; and since that time the *English* have not been masters of so much as a single inch of ground in all that territory.

Q. Had King *Henry* any strong holds left still in *France*?

A. *Calais*, *Guines*, and their territories continu'd still subject to him.

Q. Did not he labour vigorously to prevent such a series of ill success?

A. This was out of his power; he being young, unexperienc'd, and still under the direction of his ministers; and from the time that he took the administration into his own hands, to his being depos'd, *England* was never free from confusion and disorders.

Q. What occasion'd all these troubles?

A. The ill success of his affairs with *France*, the Queen's ambition, and the pretensions of the duke of *York*.

Q. What was the name of this Queen?

A. *Margaret* of *Anjou*, daughter of *Renè*, titular King of *Sicily*; she was exquisitely beautiful, had a genius and a capacity infinitely superior to what might be expected in a woman; to which was added a masculine bravery and intrepidity, which would have reflected honour on the most famous captains of her age.

Q. What troubles did this princess occasion?

A. She gain'd an absolute ascendant over the King; took the administration into her own hands, and caus'd the good *Humphrey* duke of *Gloucester*, whom she hated, to be arrested; and confin'd him close prisoner, upon pretence of his having a design to kill the King, in order to seize upon the crown. If the historians of that age are to be credited, he was strangled two days after his imprisonment, at *St. Edmundsbury*, by her order; she afterwards made *William de la Pole* duke of *Suffolk*, prime minister, who was banish'd the kingdom. This minister was succeeded by *Edmund Beaufort*, duke of *Somerset*, a man odious to the *English*, because *Normandy* had been lost at the time of his being governour thereof.

Q. Why was this change follow'd with discontent?

A. It was impossible but it must disgust great numbers of people; and *Richard*, duke of *York*, who laid just claim to the crown, made this a pretence to levy an army.

Q. Wherein did his pretensions consist?

A. He was son of *Richard* earl of *Cambridge*, beheaded for rebellion at *Southampton* in 1415; and grandson of *Edmund de Langley*, duke of *York*, fifth son of *Edward III.* He was, by the mother's side, the sole heir of the house of *Mortimer*, or *March*; and this house descended from *Lionel*, third son of *Edward III.* and elder brother to *John of Gaunt*, duke of *Lancaster*,

Q. Do

Q. Do the women succeed to the crown of *England*?

A. We have already had an example thereof in the person of *Maud*; agreeable to which the *Mortimers* were justly entitled to the crown, to the exclusion of the dukes of *Lancaster*; and as the whole right of these Princes was now devolv'd upon *Richard* duke of *York*, as heir to his mother, he might aspire to the crown of *England*.

Q. But *Henry VI.* was not an usurper?

A. 'Tis true; but then he was grandson to an usurper: however, his unwarlike genius, the calamities of his reign, and the fickle temper of the *English*, ever greedy of novelty, prompted duke *Richard* to revive a quarrel, which he had not dar'd so much as to mention in the two preceding reigns.

Q. Did his success equal the hopes with which he had flatter'd himself?

A. He defeated the King's army at *St. Albans*, in 1455, took King *Henry* prisoner, and made himself be declar'd protector, but did not dare to go any farther lengths.

Q. What did the Queen do?

A. It being very much her interest to oppose his designs, she got together a body of troops, march'd forth against the duke, and his adherents, and after losing two battles at *Blore-heath* and *Northampton*, she defeated him at *Wakefeld* in *December* 1460; kill'd him and his second son, the young earl of *Rutland*, being but twelve years of age; and their heads were fix'd on the walls of the city of *York*, with that of the earl of *Salisbury*.

Q. Was the duke's party ruin'd by his death?

A. *Edward* earl of *March* his son, and *Richard Nevil* the brave earl of *Warwick*, got together the remains of the routed army, which they reinforc'd with new levies; and coming up with the Queen's forces on *Palm-Sunday*, in 1461, the famous battle of *Towton* was fought, which lasted from morning till night, and ended with the total defeat of the Queen's army. Historians assure us, that 36776 men were kill'd in this battle.

Q. What were the fruits of this victory?

A. *Edward*

A. Edward, earl of March was proclaim'd *March 5th*, and crown'd King of *England*, in the city of *London*, the 29th of *June* of the same year.

Q. How old was King *Henry* when he was de-thron'd?

A. Thirty-nine years, and about three months, He had by *Margaret* his wife only one son, call'd *Edward*, who was in the ninth year of his age when his father met with this ill fate.

The year 1438 was remarkable for a cruel famine that made dreadful havock in *France* and *England* at the same time, and which was follow'd by the plague.

WHITE ROSE: Or,

Kings of the House of YORK.

EDWARD IV. XXXVth King of
England.

From 1461 to 1483.

Popes:

Emperor:

PIUS II.	1458	FREDERIC IV.	1440
PAUL II.	1464	King of France.	
SIXTUS IV.	1467	LEWIS XI.	1461

Q. WHAT became of the Queen after this defeat?

A. She fled into Scotland, with the King her consort, and the Prince of *Wales* her son, and there met with a favourable reception.

Q. From

Q. From whom?

A. From *Mary of Gueldres*, mother of King *James III.* to whom she surrender'd *Berwick*, the better to engage the Queen in her interests, and to obtain a body of forces in order to recover what she had lost.

Q. Did she obtain any?

A. Yes; and also from the King of *France*; and thus having got together a considerable body of *French* and *Scotch* troops, she enter'd *Northumberland* in 1463.

Q. Was her enterprize successful?

A. No; they were entirely routed by *John Nevil*, baron of *Montacute*. The year after, *Henry* being at a loss whither to retire, and being afraid that the *Scots* would surrender him up, he return'd to *England* in order to conceal himself there; but he was discover'd, seiz'd, and carry'd to *London* in an ignominious manner, and imprison'd in the tower.

Q. Whither did the Queen design to retire?

A. An adventure related by *Monstrelet*, would make one conclude that she also was resolv'd to conceal herself in *England*, till she might meet with an opportunity of embarking, she being afraid of trusting the *Scots* any longer. The historian just now cited, relates, that this Queen and her son were taken by thieves, who plunder'd them of every thing they had; but afterwards quarrelling about the division of the booty, the Queen took the Prince her son in her arms, and struck into the remotest part of the forest, where she would have died with fatigue and grief, had she not met a peasant, who commiserating her sufferings, conducted her to the sea-side, where a ship lay, which convey'd her to *Flanders*; from whence she retir'd to *France*, to the duke of *Anjou* her father.

Q. Did *Edward IV.* sit quietly on his throne after this defeat?

A. As he was persuaded that the surest method to establish himself in it, would be to make an alliance with *Lewis XI.* King of *France*, he deputed the earl of *Warwick* to demand *Bona of Savoy*, sister-in-law to that King, in marriage in his name; but just as it was upon the point of being concluded, he sent orders to the earl to break the treaty.

Q. On

Q. On what motive?

A. King *Edward* having cast his eyes upon *Elizabeth Widville*, widow of Sir *John Grey*, and daughter of Sir *Richard Widville*, afterwards created earl *Rivers*, and constable of *England*, fell passionately in love with her, and finding it impossible for him to conquer it, he resolv'd to take her to wife.

Q. Did so unequal a match give satisfaction?

A. The earl of *Warwick* resolv'd to revenge himself publickly for the affront which *Edward* had put upon him; and the rest of the nobles could not see without jealousy, the Queen's relations rais'd to the highest employments.

Q. What was the consequence of this?

A. The earl of *Warwick*, the marquis of *Montacute*, the archbishop of *York*, and the duke of *Clarence*, brother to King *Edward*, concerted measures in order to dethrone *Edward*; and accordingly rais'd an army, in the year 1469, defeated that of King *Edward*; took him prisoner the next year, and sent him to *Middleham* castle in *Yorkshire*.

Q. In what manner did he make his escape?

A. He brib'd those who were appointed to guard him, and afterwards levied a stronger body of troops than the former: with these he attack'd the earl of *Warwick* so furiously, that he was forc'd to fly into *France*, with the duke of *Clarence*. But during his absence, his friend's taking advantage of King *Edward*'s remissness; who now devoted himself entirely to his pleasures, exerted themselves with so much vigour, that he cross'd the sea with all possible dispatch in order to head them.

Q. Did he meet with better success in this engagement?

A. Yes; for he forc'd King *Edward* to fly into *Holland*, and restor'd *Henry* to the throne, the 14th of *October*, 1470, summon'd a parliament, wherein *Edward* was declar'd a traitor and usurper, and confiscated all his possessions.

Q. Did

Q. Did his affairs continue in this flourishing condition for any considerable time?

A. No: King *Edward* return'd to *England* about the middle of *March* in 1471, and made a descent at *Raven-spur*, having brought 2000 men with him. In a few days he levied a powerful army; upon which the earl hasted to *London*, but coming to an engagement at *Barnet*, he lost his life in it, as well as the marquiss of *Montacute* his brother; when *Henry* was again imprison'd in the tower, which prov'd the last, on the 14th of *April*, 1471, and *Edward* re-ascended the throne.

Q. Was no attempt made to dethrone him?

A. Queen *Margaret* headed a powerful army, under whom Prince *Edward* her son, the duke of *Somerset*, the earls of *Devonshire* and *Oxford*, and other persons commanded.

Q. What did King *Edward* upon this occasion?

A. He advanc'd against them, and coming up with them near *Tewksbury*, defeated them entirely on the 3^d of *May*; *Edward* Prince of *Wales* and the Queen were taken prisoners, and the former was afterwards barbarously murder'd; the duke of *Somerset* was taken and beheaded, and the earls of *Richmond* and *Pembroke* were oblig'd to fly into *Bretagne*, where they were seiz'd.

Q. What became of the King and Queen?

A. King *Edward* sacrific'd *Henry* to his own security, in the fiftieth year of his age; and as for the Queen, she was imprison'd in the tower, and did not recover her liberty till 1475, when she return'd into *France*, after *Lewis* had promis'd to pay 50000 crowns, in five years, for her ransom, which he did accordingly.

Q. What did King *Edward* afterwards?

A. He visited all the provinces of his dominions, and caus'd upwards of fourteen hundred gentlemen, who were either impeach'd or convicted of adhering to King *Henry's* interest, to be put to death; and to compleat these bloody executions, he caus'd the duke of *Clarence* his brother to be drown'd in a butt of *Malmsey*.

Q. For what reason?

A. Because he had spoke, in his passion, with too much

much freedom against the King, and had even hinted, that he was a bastard. On the other side, he had drawn upon himself the hatred of the Queen, and of *Richard* duke of *Gloucester*, *Edward's* other brother, who aspir'd to the crown after his death.

Q. Are these the only memorable transactions in King *Edward's* reign?

A. He oblig'd *James* III. King of *Scots*, to surrender up *Berwick*, which *Henry* VI. had given up into his hands, after which he went over into *France* with a strong body of forces.

Q. Did he perform any remarkable action in that kingdom?

A. No; for the constable of *St. Paul* having broke his word with him, and *Charles* duke of *Burgundy* not joining him with an army, according to his promise; he was easily prevail'd with to consent to a peace, whereof *Lewis* XI. made the first overtures, and which they concluded in their interview at *Pequigni*, the 29th of *August*, 1475. He also confirm'd the alliance with *Portugal*, renew'd the alliance with the King of *Denmark* concerning the *Hanse-towns*, and concluded a treaty with the King of *Castile*.

Q. How did King *Edward* employ himself after all his wars were at an end?

A. In improving the civil government; restoring things to the good order they were in before the breaking out of the wars; and in encouraging trade and all the polite arts.

Q. What were the qualities of King *Edward*?

A. Before he was King he was surprizingly active, vigilant and warlike; but he was no sooner invested with the regal dignity, than he devoted himself almost wholly to his pleasures. When he came to the crown, he was one of the handsomest men in *England*, and perhaps in all *Europe*.

Q. What do authors relate concerning his death?

A. *Philip de Commines* pretends that he died for grief that *Lewis* XI. preferr'd the alliance of the house of *Austria* to that of his family; but this is not probable.

Some

Some have accus'd, but on what foundation I know not, the duke of *Gloucester* his brother, of poisoning him. What appears most likely is, that his indulging himself too much in an entertainment, brought him to his end. But be this as it will, he was seiz'd with a violent fever, which carry'd him off, the 9th of *April*, 1483, in the forty-second year of his age, and the twenty-third of his reign.

Q. What issue had he?

A. He had by Queen *Elizabeth* his wife, three sons and eight daughters, whereof one son and two daughters died in their infancy. *Edward*, who succeeded him; and *Richard* duke of *York*. His surviving daughters were *Elizabeth*, afterwards married to *Henry VII.* *Cecily*, married to the lord *Wells*; *Anne*, to *Thomas Howard* duke of *Norfolk*; *Bridgit*, who embrac'd a monastick life; *Mary*, who died unmarried; *Catherine*, married to *William Courtney*, earl of *Devonshire*.

Q. Had not King *Edward* several mistresses?

A. Yes; but he was particularly enamour'd of three; whereof *Jane Shore* was one; the first, he said, was the merriest woman in the world; the second, the most witty; and the third, the most holy, because she never stirr'd out of the church but when he sent for her. *Edward* left but two bastards, whom *Elizabeth Lucy* brought him, to whom, 'tis said, he had promis'd marriage. These were *Arthur*, surnam'd *Plantagenet*, created viscount *Lisle*, by *Henry VIII.* and *Elizabeth* his sister marry'd to *Thomas Lumley*.

EDWARD V. XXXVIIth King of England.

Who reigned only two months and twelve days of the year 1483.

Pope.

SIXTUS IV.

1471

King of France.

Emperor of the East.

CHARLES VIII. - 1483

FREDERIC IV.

1440

Q. WHO succeeded King Edward IV?

A. Edward V. his eldest son, being but twelve years of age, who began his reign in 1483.

Q. Give some account of his reign.

A. It lasted but two months and twelve days; for both he and his brother were murder'd by the protector Richard duke of Gloucester their uncle, who afterwards usurp'd the crown.

Q. Relate the particulars of this revolution?

A. Richard having for some time observ'd, that it would be impossible for his brother to live much longer; he being just ready to sink under the burden of his infirmities, which his licentiousness and excess had brought upon him; set every wicked artifice at work, in order to get young Prince Edward out of the hands of Anthony Woodville earl Rivers, his uncle by the mother's side; and Richard out of those of the Queen-mother, who was fled for sanctuary to the abbey of Westminster.

Q. How did he dispose of these two Princes?

A. He lodged them in the tower, where the English Kings usually resided before their coronation; when having thus got them into his power, he, to his mother's shame, who was still living, spread a report, that the late King and the duke of Clarence his brother, were the offspring of her unlawful amours; and that as he himself

himself was the only legitimate son of the duke of *York*, he ought justly to succeed him: and further, that the Princes, his nephews, were unlawfully begotten, or of very doubtful birth.

Q. Was any credit given to what he said?

A. They either believ'd the protector, or did not dare to oppose him; for he had a very strong party, who appear'd sword in hand, by which means all his proceedings were approv'd; and the common people fomented by *Henry Stafford* duke of *Buckingham*, (the head of the party) offer'd to set the crown upon his head.

Q. Did he accept it;

A. Yes; having first made a shew as if he had been forc'd to it; he accepted of the offer, and a little after his coronation put to death his two nephews.

Q. In what manner was this horrid action perpetrated?

A. The protector, upon *Sir Robert Brackenbury* lieutenant of the tower, refusing to be an accomplice in so barbarous a scene of villany, gave the government thereof to *Sir James Tyrrel*, for one night only; who employing one *Miles Forest* and *John Dighton*, the former his footman, and the latter a wretch whom he had hir'd to commit the murder; these villains, in the dead of night, enter'd the chamber where the two Princes lay, and rushing upon the bed, stifled them both; after which they were buried under a little stair-case there. This was told afterwards by *Tyrrel*, who was executed under *Henry VII.* By order of King *Charles II.* their bones were removed, in 1674 to *Westminster-Abbey*, and buried among the tombs of the *English* monarchs, where a monument was erected to their memory.

RICHARD III. *surnam'd* Crook-back'd,
XXXVIIIth King of England.

From 1483 to 1485.

Popes.

Emperors of the East.

SIXTUS IV.

1471

FREDERIC IV.

1440

INNOCENT VIII.

1484

King of France.

CHARLES VIII.

1483

Q. BY whom was King *Richard* III. rais'd to the throne?

A. By the people, accompanied by the lord-mayor and aldermen, who offered him the crown that *Edward* IV. had wore, which he accepted.

Q. Describe the person and qualities of *Richard*.

A. Altho' he be well enough known by the horrid action above-mentioned, I shall nevertheless, after all the *English* historians describe him as follows: He was little in stature, very ugly and crook-back'd; was a great impostor, dissembler, hypocrite, and very cruel in his nature; but at the same time he had a great personal valour: was sagacious, would have justice exactly administered to all his subjects, without distinction, provided it did not tend to the depriving him of the crown; profoundly skill'd in politicks, and had the utmost command over himself in concealing his intentions.

Q. Did this Prince long enjoy the fruit of his guilt?

A. The duke of *Buckingham* finding himself neglected by the King, and being highly exasperated at it, concerted with *John Morton*, bishop of *Ely*, to set the earl of *Richmond*, who was then in *Bretagne*, upon the throne.

Q. Was this design successful?

A. King

A. King *Richard* having discover'd the plot, march'd out against him. The duke being abandon'd by his army, hid himself in the house of one of his old domesticks, *Banister* by name, who betray'd him: After which he was carried to *Shrewsbury*, and there beheaded.

Q. Was King *Richard* after this firmly establish'd in the throne?

A. No; for the earl of *Richmond* knowing certainly that the *English* were very desirous of having him reign over them, set out from *Harfleur* the 30th of *July*, 1485, and landed at *Milford-Haven* in *Wales*, with 2000 men whom *Charles VIII.* had sent to his assistance.

Q. Did he meet with any friends there?

A. Yes; Sir *Rice ap Thomas* join'd him with a considerable body of *Welsh* forces. The lord *Stanley* came with 5000 men to his assistance, and Sir *William Stanley* his brother, with 2000 men. With this army, which with the succours from *France*, amounted to upwards of 12000 men, he advanc'd towards King *Richard*, and came up with him near *Bosworth*, the 22^d of *August*, 1485, when an engagement ensuing, King *Richard's* army was defeated, and he himself lost his life in it.

Q. Was King *Richard* ever married?

A. Yes; to *Anne*, second daughter to *Richard Nevil*, the great earl of *Warwick*; by whom he had a son named *Edward*, whom he created Prince of *Wales*, and who died in *April*, 1484, in the eleventh year of his age. *Richard* left two illegitimate children; *John* of *Gloucester*, and *Catharine*, married to *William* earl of *Huntington*.

Q. What became of King *Richard's* body?

A. It was found among the dead, stark naked, and besmear'd with blood and dirt; and being taken up, was laid cross a horse, with the head hanging down on one side, and the feet on the other, in order to be carried to *Leicester*, where it was for two days exposed to the sight of the people: after which it was buried in a church in the same city, without the least ceremony. However some time after, *Henry VII.* caused a monument to be erected over his grave.

Q. What punishment was inflicted on *Jane Shore*?

A. Richard accused her of having conspir'd against him, in concert with the lord *Hastings*, whom he had beheaded, but she made so good a defence, that no reason could be found to condemn her. Nevertheless as *Richard* was resolv'd not to let her escape unpunish'd, he caus'd her to be judg'd by the ecclesiastical court, with regard to the disorderly life she had led. She then was sentenc'd to do penance in *St. Paul's* church, in a white sheet and a taper in her hand, in presence of all the people.

UNION of the Houses of YORK and LANCASTER.

HENRY VIIth, call'd Solomon,
XXXIXth King of England.

From 1485 to 1509.

Popes.		Emperors of the East.	
INNOCENT VIII.	1484	FREDERIC IV.	1440
ALEXANDER VI.	1492	MAXIMILIAN I.	1493
PIUS III.	1503	Kings of France.	
JULIUS II.	1503		
		CHARLES VIII.	1483
		LEWIS XII.	1498

2. WHO succeeded *Richard III*?

A. Henry VII. surnam'd the *English Solomon*, who began his reign in *August* 1485.

2. What pretensions had he to the crown?

A. He had all those of the house of *Lancaster*; for his mother (*Margaret* countess of *Richmond*, great Grand-daughter of *John* of *Ghent* duke of *Lancaster*) was become chief of that great family, by the death of *Edward* Prince of *Wales*, son of *Henry VI.* and to these he added

added the several claims of the house of *York*, by his marriage with Princess *Elizabeth*, eldest daughter of King *Edward IV.*

Q. What were his qualities?

A. It cannot be denied but that he was a very able Prince; chaste, temperate, an enemy to all publick and scandalous vices, assiduous in exercises of piety, and that he caus'd justice to be exactly administer'd, in affairs wherein his private interest was not concern'd. Tho' he saw himself oblig'd to take up arms, no Prince had ever a greater love for peace. He has been prodigiously applauded for the good laws which were made in his reign. In fine, he merited the esteem of all *Europe*. On the other side, he was insatiably covetous, and his putting to death the earl of *Warwick*, only son and heir to *George* duke of *Clarence*, will be an eternal blot upon his memory.

Q. Was he beloved by his subjects?

A. He found it impossible to obtain their affection, so that his reign was one continued series of troubles and divisions; and these were fomented chiefly by *Lambert Simnel* and *Perkin Warbeck*.

Q. Give some account of them.

A. *Simnel* was a young student of *Oxford*, and son to a baker; he was a comely person, and resembled so exactly in feature the young earl of *Warwick*, imprison'd in the tower of *London*, that it was scarce possible to distinguish them. *Richard Simon*, a priest of *Oxford*, a man of wit, but ambitious, resolv'd to set the crown of *England* upon his head; well knowing that the *English* were very fond of novelty.

Q. What did he in order to effect it?

A. He taught *Simnel* to personate the young earl of *Warwick*; and he being of an ambitious spirit, acted whatever part they thought proper to give them. *Simon* carried him to *Ireland*, where he was recogniz'd earl of *Warwick*; when immediately great endeavours were made to raise him to the throne, the people thinking that he laid just claim to it, and accordingly he was crown'd King of *England*, at *Christ-Church* in *Dublin*.

Q. Was

Q. Was he acknowledg'd by the *Irish* only?

A. *Margaret* of *York*, duchess dowager of *Burgundy*, and sister to *Edward* the IVth, a sworn enemy to the house of *Lancaster*, sent him two thousand veteran *German* soldiers; and *John De la Pole* earl of *Lincoln*, son to the earl of *Suffolk*, the lord *Lovel*, and several others join'd him.

Q. Did he continue in *Ireland*?

A. Finding he had an army at his command, capable of attempting any thing, he cross'd into *England* in 1487; but the King's forces coming up with him near a village call'd *Stroke*, in *Nottinghamshire*, utterly routed his troops, in an engagement, which lasted three hours; *Henry* VII. spar'd his life, and at first order'd him to serve in his kitchen, and afterwards made him one of his falconers, in which condition he spent the remainder of his days. As to the priest, he was thrown into prison, and so closely confin'd, that he was never heard of afterwards.

Q. To come to *Warbeck*, whose son was he?

A. Of a converted *Jew* of *Tournay*, *John Osbeck* by name, and *Catharine de la Fare*. He was born in *England*, and possess'd his native tongue very well. He was handsome, well-shap'd; had a noble air that commanded love, and persuaded the people to take him for *Richard* duke of *York*, brother of *Edward* V. who, as has been already observ'd, fell a sacrifice to the ambition of *Richard* III. his uncle.

Q. Who first put him upon acting this part?

A. The duchess dowager of *Burgundy*, a profess'd enemy to King *Henry* VII. who finding that *Simnel's* imposture had met with ill success, was still resolv'd to take advantage of the fickleness of the nation, by setting up this pretended duke of *York*.

Q. What measures did she take for this purpose?

A. Finding that *Perkin* was a fit instrument for her designs, she taught him his part; and in order to remove all suspicion, sent him into *Portugal*, from whence he went into *Ireland*.

Q. Did he continue there long?

A. A war breaking out between *Henry* VII. and *Charles* VIII. King of *France*, *Charles* invited *Perkin* to his

his court, where he was receiv'd in quality of duke of York; but the only motive for his so doing, was in order to oblige the King of *England* to sign the articles of peace with greater dispatch; thereby to give him an opportunity of making a voyage to *Naples*.

Q. What became of *Perkin*?

A. He went next into *Flanders*, and waited upon the duchess of *Burgundy*, who first pretended not to know him, but she afterwards recogniz'd him, and gave out publicly that he was the true duke of *York*, and that the ruffians, whom *Richard III.* had sent to murder him, had given him his liberty, after repenting their having put to death the Prince of *Wales*, his elder brother.

Q. What steps did she take in order to set him on the *English* throne?

A. She always treated him as her nephew, and having enabled him to attempt a descent in *Kent*, and from thence a second time into *Ireland*, but not succeeding, he went into *Scotland* accompanied with several *English* lords, his adherents.

Q. How was this imposter receiv'd there?

A. King *James IV.* gave him an honourable reception, and *Catharine Gordon*, daughter to the earl of *Huntsley*, one of his relations in marriage; and took him twice with him into *England* at the head of an army; but not succeeding in his designs, he abandon'd him, and concluded a peace in 1497.

Q. Where did *Perkin* retire afterwards?

A. Into *Ireland*, where hearing the following year that the *Cornish* men had taken up arms, he went thither, got together 3000 men, laid siege to *Exeter*, but fled from thence upon news being brought him that the King's army was advancing.

Q. Was it possible for him to escape?

A. He was so closely pursu'd, that he fled for sanctuary to the monastery of *Bowley* in *New Forest*, but came out of it upon the King's promising to spare his life, after which he was imprison'd in the tower of *London*.

Q. Did he continue long there?

A. The

A. The King being inform'd that he was setting every engine at work, in order to escape from thence with the earl of *Warwick*, he caused him to be hang'd at *Tyburn*, and beheaded the earl; *Henry* would have it publish'd that he sacrific'd this young nobleman, merely to the jealousy of *Ferdinand* the Catholick, who refus'd to bestow the infanta *Catharine*, his daughter, on the Prince of *Wales*, so long as the earl liv'd. But we may presume this was but a pretence to excuse King *Henry*.

Q. What other memorable incidents happen'd under *Henry* the VIIth's reign?

A. The inhabitants of *Cornwal* made an insurrection, elected the lord *Audley* for their general, and advanc'd as far as *Black-beath*, where they were defeated. The people in the North had also rebell'd, because a certain tax had been laid upon them; set Sir *John Egremont* at their head, and march'd towards *London*; but they were defeated by the earl of *Surrey*, and forc'd to submit themselves. *Henry* knowing he was not belov'd, instituted a guard of fifty bowmen, call'd *Yeomen of the Guard*, to be continually near his person, and that of his successors.

Q. Was he not engaged in foreign wars?

A. He pretended as tho' he had a design to engage in a war with *France*, in order to prevent *Charles VIII.* from marrying the heir of *Bretagne*. He concluded an alliance with *Maximilian* King of the Romans, *Ferdinand* King of *Spain*, and *Philip* archduke of *Austria*; and landing an army at *Calais*, he besieg'd *Boulogne*, but without success, and not long after he concluded a peace with *Charles VIII.* in 1492.

Q. What was remarkable in the marriage of his son *Arthur* Prince of *Wales*?

A. This young Prince had espous'd *Catherine*, daughter to *Ferdinand* King of *Arragon*, but 'twas pretended that their marriage was not consummated; however several authors affirm the contrary, and among the rest *Warham*, archbishop of *Canterbury*, who always oppos'd the marriage of this Princess with *Henry VIII.*

Q. Had he credit enough to hinder it?

A. No;

A. No; the avarice of *Henry VII.* (of which *Empson* and *Dudley*, two lawyers were the detestable instruments) made him chuse rather to give *Henry* his second son in marriage to that Princess, than to part with her dowry, which amounted to two hundred thousand crowns of gold; and Pope *Julius II.* gave the necessary dispensations.

Q. Had the remonstrances of the archbishop no effect?

A. Some writers relate, that notwithstanding the Pope's dispensation, he asserted openly that this marriage was not allowable by any laws divine or human. But this not being approv'd of, the marriage was solemniz'd in *June 1509*; and the opposition of the archbishop had no other effect than to serve as a handle for the divorce, as will be seen in the sequel.

Q. Of what death did *Henry VII.* die?

A. Of a consumption, the 22^d of *April, 1509.* in the fifty-second year of his age, and the twenty-fourth of his reign; and was buried in a chapel in *Westminster-abbey*, which chapel he had erected with the utmost magnificence, it being look'd upon as the finest structure in *England.*

Q. To whom was *Henry* marry'd?

A. To *Elizabeth* of the house of *York*, eldest daughter of King *Edward IV.* by whom he had the following issue: *Arthur* Prince of *Wales*, who died at seventeen years of age; *Henry*, who succeeded him; *Edmund* who died at five years of age; and *Edward* born in *1500*, who died soon after. Of four daughters, two died in their infancy; *Margaret* was married to *James IV.* King of *Scots*; and *Mary*, who had been promis'd to *Charles* archduke of *Austria*, was married to *Lewis XII.* King of *France*, and afterwards to *Charles Brandon* duke of *Sussex*.

Q. Did not a strange disease break out in his time?

A. Yes; the sweating sickness made dreadful havock. The royal palace at *Sheen*, where *Henry* us'd to reside, was burnt the 21st of *December, 1498.* Some time after *Henry* rebuilt it, and gave it, the name of *Richmond*, where stands the village so nam'd.

Q. What

2. What other remarkable particulars do we meet with?

A. In 1492, *Christopher Columbus* set out from *Cales*, to attempt a discovery of the new world or *America*. *Henry Chicheley*, archbishop of *Canterbury* distinguish'd himself greatly by his merit, and *Thomas Woolsey*, who afterwards was cardinal. *Henry* founded a chapel at *Windsor*, and several monasteries of *Dominicans* and *Franciscans*. He turn'd into an hospital the palace of the *Savoy*, built under *Henry III.* by *Peter* earl of *Savoy*.

HENRY VIII. XLth King of England.

From 1509 to 1547.

Popes.		Emperors.	
JULIUS II.	1303	MAXIMILIAN I.	1493
LEO X.	1513	CHARLES V.	1519
ADRIAN VI.	1522	Kings of France.	
CLEMENT VII.	1523	LEWIS XII.	1498
PAUL III.	1534	FRANCIS I.	1515

2. WHO succeeded *Henry VII.*

A. *Henry VIII.* his second son, who began his reign *April 22, 1509*, being eighteen years of age, wanting a few months.

2. Describe his person and qualities?

A. He was a comely Prince, but grew too corpulent in the latter part of his life. He was skilful in all bodily exercises, brave without ostentation, of a frank and candid disposition, and liberal to excess. He lov'd study, and had made a progress in such sciences, as are seldom acquir'd by mighty Princes. He was perfectly vers'd in music, and learned both in philosophy and divinity. On the other side, he was cruel, and withal very presumptuous, which made him be often overreach'd by those Princes who had any dispute with him.

2. Was

Q. Was he a great stickler for the See of *Rome*?

A. No one could have discover'd more zeal for it than he did in the beginning of his reign; he even wrote against *Luther*, a book entitled, *Of the Seven Sacraments*; and this gain'd him the new title of *Defender of the Faith*, which Pope *Leo X.* bestow'd upon him by a bull, in 1521, and his successors have preserv'd it ever since their separation from the church of *Rome*?

Q. Was he always actuated with the same zeal for the See of *Rome*?

A. No; for that court having refus'd to give him satisfaction with respect to the divorce, he separated himself from that church, and his subjects follow'd his example.

Q. What do you mean by this divorce?

A. I just now observ'd, that he had been married to *Catharine of Arragon*, relist of his elder brother; but after eighteen years cohabitation, and having had three children by her, he resolv'd to rid himself of her. 'Tis pretended that cardinal *Wolsey*, who sought for an opportunity of revenging himself on *Charles V.* who had promis'd to get him elected Pope, but had broke his word; caus'd a proposal to be made by *Henry Longland* his confessor, to divorce *Catharine*, because, as he said, the whole world exclaim'd against it; and at the same time he insinuated to him, that the Pope had exceeded the limits of his power, in granting him a dispensation.

Q. How far did this divorce affect *Charles V.*?

A. He was nephew to *Catharine*, who was sister to *Joan of Arragon* his mother, second daughter of *Ferdinand V.* King of *Arragon*, and of *Isabella*, Queen of *Castile*; and he so highly resent'd the affront which was put upon his aunt, that he sought all opportunities of revenging himself.

Q. How did he relish the proposal which *Wolsey* made him?

A. As he was of a fickle temper, he was very much tired of being so long married to one woman; not to mention that having some scruples of conscience, with regard to his marriage with *Catharine*, he consented to the cardinal's proposal.

Q. What happen'd afterwards?

A. Falling passionately in love with *Anne Boleyn*, he commanded cardinal *Wolsey* to intercede with the Pope, in order to obtain a divorce from *Catharine of Arragon*.

Q. Who was Pope at that time?

A. *Clement VII.* who was thought to be a fit instrument to indulge *Henry* in his passions, because of the resentment that Pope shewed for the ill treatment he had met with from the emperor, who had imprison'd him in the castle of *St. Angelo*, after he had caus'd *Rome* to be taken and plunder'd by his forces.

Q. Did he grant him a divorce?

A. He at first gave him some hopes of it, which only inflam'd *Henry* the more; but his scruple to dissolve a marriage of eighteen years continuance, concluded by virtue of the dispensation of a former Pope, and blest'd with three children, whereof one was still living; the fear of angering so formidable a Prince as *Charles V.*; these several considerations, I say, prevail'd with the Pope to change his former resolutions.

Q. What course did King *Henry* take?

A. He first employ'd flattery, intreaties, menaces, money, and the credit he had with *Francis I.* and afterwards remov'd the cognizance of that affair to his own dominions; and obtain'd cardinal *Wolsey* his chief minister and favourite, and cardinal *Campejus*, to be commissioners for the hearing of the same. But after these several steps had been taken, and his cause had been pleaded before these two prelates, (both of them his subjects) without being able to obtain what he so earnestly desired, he grew tir'd with the tedious proceedings of the court of *Rome*.

Q. Did he continue to cohabit with Queen *Catharine*?

A. No; he sent her to *Kimbolton*, one of the royal palaces in *Huntingtonshire*, and was privately married to *Anne Boleyn*, whom he had created marchioness of *Pembroke* the year before, and who was crown'd *June 1.* 1533.

Q. Was his former marriage disannull'd?

A. Yes; *Cranmer*, whom he had rais'd to the See of *Canterbury*, dissolv'd it, by a sentence pronounc'd the 23^d of

of May, 1533, without waiting for the sentence of the Court of Rome; their proceedings being too slow for this Prince.

Q. Did Henry stop here?

A. No; several statutes were made, by which it was enacted, 24 Hen. VIII. c. 12. that for the future no person should appeal to the court of Rome, in any case whatsoever; but that all causes ecclesiastical should be judg'd within the realm by the prelates: that neither first fruits, annates, or St. Peter's pence should be any longer paid; nor palls, nor bulls for bishopricks, nor dispensations of any kind, procured from the See of Rome; 25 Hen. VIII. c. 20, 21; and that all who should presume to infringe these statutes, should incur the penalties contained in the statutes of provision and *Præmunire*.

Q. What temper did Clement VII. observe on this occasion?

A. He threatned Henry with excommunication, in case he refused to acknowledge his fault, by bringing back all things to the same foot in which they had been before his attempt, and to take back *Catharine*: however Francis I. interpos'd his authority, and in the interview which he had with the Pope at *Marseilles*, he prevail'd with him to suspend the excommunication, till such time as he had employ'd his endeavours in order to make him return to the obedience of the holy See.

Q. Did this meet with success?

A. Francis I. sent John de Bellay, bishop of Paris, to King Henry. De Bellay intreated him not to persist in his resolution. The prelate conducted himself with so much prudence and moderation, that King Henry gave him some hopes of his submission; and promis'd not to separate himself from the church, provided the Pope would delay the excommunication.

Q. Did this prevail with the Pope to suspend it?

A. John de Bellay went post to Rome, in order to carry this news, where being arriv'd, he desir'd further time to work with King Henry, in order to make him change his resolution, which was a matter of no small difficulty. As the partizans of Charles V. were not able to prevail with the Pope to refuse so just a request, they had it li-

mitted to the shortest time possible; and were so urgent to have it executed, that upon its being claps'd, and no news coming from *England*, excommunication was pronounc'd in 1535, and set up in all the usual places.

Q. What effects did it produce?

A. It was very fatal to the See of *Rome*; the Pope, who now blam'd his over-hasty proceedings, found it impossible to appease King *Henry*; for that monarch now threw off all restraint, and separated from the See of *Rome*. The parliament declar'd him supreme head of the church of *England*; granted him the first fruits, and tenths of the revenues of all benefices, and the power of nominating to bishopricks. The parliament pass'd also another act, to deprive all persons charg'd with treason, of the privilege of sanctuary. Thus ended the power of the Pope in *England*, in 1535.

Q. What was *Henry's* next step?

A. He persecuted such as oppos'd his designs, and caus'd the learned Sir *Thomas More*, lord high chancellor, and *John Fisher*, bishop of *Rochester*, who had been his tutor, to be beheaded; he likewise order'd the bones of *Thomas Becket*, archbishop of *Canterbury*, to be publickly burnt.

Q. Did not his subjects oppose these proceedings?

A. The laity had the utmost aversion and contempt for the clergy; not to mention the offence they took at the licentious lives the monks led.

Q. Did not the clergy exert themselves upon this occasion?

A. The monks preach'd with great vehemence against these innovations, and the priests prevail'd upon the peasants in the north of *England* to rise in 1536; however the mutineers accepted of a general pardon, laid down their arms, but took them up again; they were defeated, and most of their leaders were executed, so that they were oblig'd to submit themselves.

Q. Did not *Henry* embrace the new opinions?

A. No; he constantly adher'd to the principles of the church of *Rome*, and even caus'd several Protestants to be burnt.

Q. Was he engag'd in no wars?

A. He

A. He enter'd in 1511, into the confederacy with Pope *Julius II.* made against *Lewis XII.* in which the *Venetians* had engag'd with the King of *Spain*, who deceiv'd King *Henry*, by employing the *English* troops in the conquering *Navarre*. *Henry* nevertheless engag'd in another league with *Leo X.* the Emperor *Maximilian*, and *Ferdinand* King of *Aragon*; but he was impos'd upon a second time, and oblig'd to carry on the war alone in *Picardy*, against the *French*.

Q. Did he perform any memorable action there?

A. Not to mention the great honour he receiv'd by entertaining the Emperor in his pay, he took *Terouanne*, *Tournay*, and some other places, and triumph'd in that engagement, call'd, *The battle of the Spurs*, which was fought the 18th of *August*, 1513.

Q. Why was it so call'd?

A. Because the *French* employ'd their spurs more than their swords.

Q. In what manner did this war end?

A. By a treaty of peace concluded the ensuing year.

Q. Was this the only war King *Henry* had with *France*?

A. Having enter'd into a confederacy with *Charles V.* in order to make war upon that kingdom, he landed at *Calais*, and went and laid siege to *Boulogne*, which he made himself master of, the 14th of *September*, 1544, by the cowardice of *Vervins* who commanded there.

Q. Are these all the wars that King *Henry* was engag'd in?

A. The *Scots* marching into *England*, in order to make a diversion, with an army of 60000 men, headed by *James IV.* their King; the earl of *Surrey* advanc'd towards them with 26000 men; attack'd them at *Flodden* the 9th of *September*, 1513, where they were advantageously posted, and entirely defeated them; and *James IV.* was never seen after the battle, and 'tis certain he lost his life in it.

Q. Did *Henry* stop here?

A. *James V.* King of *Scotland*, having promis'd to come to *York*, to confer there with King *Henry*, forfeited his word. *Henry*; to revenge himself of *James*,

enter'd *Scotland*, when the *Scotch* army flying away, the *English* took a great number of prisoners. This loss joyn'd to other vexations, so strongly affected the King of *Scotland*, that he died with grief, *December 14, 1542.*

Q. Of what disease did King *Henry* die?

A. A complication of humours falling upon an old sore in his leg, brought him to his end, on the 28th of *January, 1547*, aged fifty-six years, and in the thirty-eighth of his reign.

Q. Did he leave any issue?

A. Two daughters, *Mary* and *Elizabeth*, and one son call'd *Edward*. He had the former by *Catharine* of *Arragon*; the second by *Anne Boleyn*; and *Edward*, the youngest, by *Jane Seymour*.

Q. How did he regulate the order of the succession?

A. He ordain'd by his last will and testament, that *Edward* should succeed him; that in default of his issue, *Mary* should be recogniz'd Queen; and that in case she died without children, *Elizabeth* should be advanc'd to the throne.

Q. How many wives had he?

A. Six; the first was *Catharine* of *Arragon*, by whom he had the Princess *Mary*, whom he at first declar'd, by act of Parliament, incapable of succeeding him; but he soon repeal'd it. He had had two other children by her, but they died young.

Q. Who was his second wife?

A. *Anne Boleyn*, by whom he had only one daughter named *Elizabeth*, who succeeded Queen *Mary*. *Anne Boleyn* was beheaded the 16th of *May, 1536*, *Henry* having been jealous of her. The lord *Rockford*, brother to the Queen, was accused of having committed incest with his sister, and beheaded, with four of the Queen's servants who were accus'd of lying with her. But there is no convincing proof of this accusation; and we must observe that the *Roman Catholics* have done all in their power to blacken her fame, because she favour'd the reformation.

Q. Whom did King *Henry* marry afterwards?

A. *Jane Seymour*, whom he took to wife the very next day, and had her crown'd with the utmost magnificence.

nificence. This Queen was deliver'd October 12. 1537, of Prince *Edward* (who succeeded his father) and of whom she died in childbed.

Q. Who was his fourth wife?

A. *Anne of Cleves*, sister to the duke of *Cleves*; this lady was represented to him as one of the most beautiful women of her age; but he was so much disgusted the first time he saw her, that he could never prevail with himself to love her, and repudiated her five months after.

Q. Who was the fifth?

A. *Catharine Howard*, neice to the duke of *Norfolk*; and cousin-germain to *Anne Boleyn*. Being a great beauty, he fell suddenly in love with her; but it was not lasting, for she was accus'd of adultery. *Dereham*, *Mannock*, and *Culpeper*, confess'd they had often laid with her; these three men were beheaded. The Queen confess'd that, before her marriage, she had prostituted herself to several, but she denied, as she hop'd to enter heaven, her having ever polluted the King's bed. She was condemned by act of parliament to lose her head; which was executed upon *Tower-Hill*, the 12th of February, 1542.

Q. Who was his sixth wife?

A. *Catharine Parr*, relict of the lord *Latimer*. She was handsome, and had something so engaging and insinuating, as gain'd her universal esteem; to which we must add, that she had an extensive and penetrating genius; she embrac'd the doctrine of *Luther*, but it had like to have cost her her life.

Q. In what manner did she escape King *Henry's* cruelty?

A. Her caresses and intreaties were so prevalent, that he revok'd the order he had given to have her seiz'd, and brought to a trial; however, she perhaps would not have been safe, had not death snatch'd away King *Henry* some time after,

Q. Pray give some little account of those, who were the chief instruments of the separation of the *English* from the church of *Rome*.

A. *Thomas*

A. Thomas Wolfey, who was the first who promoted the divorce, was a butcher's son of *Ipswich*, in the county of *Suffolk*, born in 1471; he was a student in *Magdalen-College* in *Oxford*, and distinguish'd himself greatly by his talents. He had been in the preceding reign, rector of *Lymington*, in *Hampshire*. *Fox* bishop of *Winchester* introduc'd him to court, and got him made almoner to the household. The next year he was appointed dean of *Lincoln*.

Q. Was he rais'd to higher dignities?

A. Henry VIII. who had a great affection for him, made him a member of the privy council; rais'd him to be prime minister, a little after bishop of *Lincoln*, and afterwards archbishop of *York*; and *Francis I.* got him elected cardinal. *Henry* made him lord-chancellor, and also obtain'd a commission from the Pope, by which he was appointed legate à latere.

Q. Did not so many great dignities satisfy his ambition?

A. No; he aim'd at the pontifical chair, to which *Charles V.* promis'd to raise him; but as that Emperor fail'd to promote his interest in two conclaves, in the first whereof he caus'd *Adrian*, who had been his tutor, to be elected Pope; *Wolfey* resolv'd to spite him, and for that purpose perswaded King *Henry* to sollicite the divorce; but this afterwards prov'd his ruin.

Q. In what manner?

A. As Wolfey had not credit enough at the court of *Rome*, to obtain those things with which he had flatter'd King *Henry* he should certainly succeed in, he grew odious to that Prince; who, tir'd out with the continual complaints that were made against him, and the repeated solicitation of *Anne Boleyn*, seiz'd all his revenues, furniture, papers, and money; and even impeach'd him of high treason, which affected him so much, that he died with grief at *Leicester-Abbey*, November 29, 1530.

Q. What have you to say of *Thomas Cranmer*?

A. He was born at *Aslackton* in *Nottinghamshire*, and educated in *Jesus college* in the university of *Cambridge*. He had travell'd into *Germany*, where he had read *Luther's* books,

books, and embrac'd his doctrines. Twas he that pointed out a method to the King to dissolve his marriage with *Catharine of Arragon*, by sending for the sentiments (in writing) of all the universities in *Europe*, which scheme was successful. The King nominated him archbishop of *Canterbury*.

Q. Did he accept of that dignity?

A. Yes; and he afterwards disannull'd King *Henry's* first marriage. He had the bravery to excommunicate the Pope, and presided over all the affairs of the *English* clergy, during the remaining part of King *Henry's* reign?

Q. What happen'd to him under Queen *Mary*?

A. He sided with the lady *Jane Grey* in opposition to Queen *Mary*, who being acknowledg'd Queen of *England*, caused him to be seiz'd, and condemn'd to the flames as a heretick; but he unhappily recanted, thinking by that means to save his life: however, he afterwards recover'd from his weakness, and gloriously receiv'd the crown of martyrdom.

Q. Who was *Thomas Cromwel*?

A. Son to a blacksmith of *Putney*. He was first one of *Wolsey's* domesticks. *Henry* appointed him visitor-general of all the monasteries, which were suppress'd in 1539. In fine, he made him vice-gerent in matters ecclesiastical, and earl of *Essex*. But being a Protestant, and having disgusted the King by his forwarding his marriage with *Anne of Cleves*, he was impeach'd of high-treason, and beheaded in 1540.

Q. As the dissolution of the monasteries in *England* happened in this reign, pray give me some account of it.

A. The number of monasteries suppress'd, in this and the next reign, amounted to six hundred and fifty-three, besides ninety Colleges; two thousand three hundred and seventy-four Chuntries, and Free Chapels; an hundred and ten Hospitals. Before their suppression they were given in, and valued at 152,517 l. 18 s. 10 d. But it is computed, that the lands and revenues belonging to them would now be worth 30,503,400 l. And the

the treasure found in them was esteem'd at 100,000*l*. Out of the spoils of these monasteries, King Henry founded the Bishopricks of *Bristol, Chester, Oxford, Gloucester, and Peterborough.*

EDWARD VI. XLIth King of England.

From 1547 to 1553.

Popes.

Emperor.

		CHARLES V.	1519
PAUL III.	1534	King of France.	
JULIUS III.	1550	HENRY II.	1547

Q. WHICH of King Henry's children succeeded him?

A. Edward VI. who tho' but going into his tenth year, was nevertheless very well skill'd in the *Latin* and *French* tongues; and had some knowledge of the *Greek*, the *Spanish*, and the *Italian*.

Q. To whom was the administration of affairs committed during his minority?

A. Agreeable to Henry's will, it devolv'd on twelve counsellors and sixteen regents, who nevertheless appointed *Edward Seymour*, earl of *Hereford*, and duke of *Somerset*, one of the regents and the King's uncle, protector.

Q. Did any thing remarkable happen during his administration?

A. *Seymour* who follow'd the opinions of the Reformers, which he had instill'd into King *Edward*, with whose education he was entrusted, had no sooner obtain'd the sovereign authority, than he approv'd of King Henry's separation from the church of *Rome*; and greatly forwarded the reformation, which hitherto was very imperfect.

Q. In what manner did he do this?

A. The

A. The Parliament supported him with their whole power.

Q. What steps did he take in order to settle it upon a strong foundation?

A. He abolish'd private masses, and had the cup restor'd to the laity. Gave orders for taking away all images out of churches; caus'd the *Common Prayer* to be corrected, and confirm'd the Reformation by act of Parliament.

Q. Did not so many alterations occasion great disorders in *England*?

A. Yes; the common people not having now so easy an opportunity of getting a livelihood as before, because of the great number of monks that had been drove out of the suppress'd monasteries, and therefore were oblig'd to work; these fomented the murmurs, so that several counties in *England* took up arms.

Q. Was this insurrection attended with any ill consequences?

A. The rebels after having been defeated in several rencounters, accepted of the general pardon that was offer'd them. Upon occasion of these insurrections, the *Lords Lieutenants* of Counties were first appointed.

Q. Was the protector engag'd in no wars?

A. The *Scots* having refus'd to grant *Mary Stuart* in marriage to King *Edward*, who had already been promis'd to him, the protector entred *Scotland* with an army of 18000 men; defeated that of the Queen at *Musselburgh*, the 10th of *September*, 1547, tho' 30000 strong; kill'd 14000 men, took 1500 prisoners, whereof 800 were gentlemen: and the better to improve this victory, he enter'd *Scotland*, where he took a considerable number of strong-holds, and plunder'd *Edinburgh*.

Q. Was the war carried on with equal success?

A. No; *Henry II.* King of *France*, sent 6000 men into *Scotland*, who joining the *Scots*, dispossessed the *English* of all the places they had taken; advanc'd as far as *Newcastle*, and carried off a great booty, in spite of the protector.

Q. Wherefore was he unable to oppose these conquests?

A. The

A. The court was full of malecontents, and the provinces of rebels; not to mention that *France* was levying forces, and threatned *England* with a terrible war.

Q. In what manner did he put a stop to all these disorders?

A. He suppress'd the malecontents by his authority, while the King's forces curb'd the insolence of the rebels; and the *French* not succeeding in the siege of *Boulogne*, turn'd it into a blockade.

Q. Did success always attend upon the protector?

A. No; he was so unfortunate, as to have the lord *Thomas Seymour*, his brother, (who had married *Catharine Parr*, and been created baron of *Sudley*, and lord high-admiral,) endeavour to supplant him. He was even accus'd of having conspir'd against the government, which, however, was never well prov'd. He was sentenc'd by the Parliament to lose his head, and accordingly was executed the 20th of *March*, 1549.

Q. Had the protector no other enemy?

A. *John Dudley* earl of *Warwick*, and lately created duke of *Northumberland*, had him dismiss'd from the administration, and prosecuted him with so much vigour, that an act of Parliament was made, by which he was sentenc'd to lose his head, as guilty of felony, which accordingly was executed the 22^d of *January*, 1552. 'Twas with the utmost reluctance the King sign'd the warrant for his execution.

Q. What actions did *Dudley* perform during his regency?

A. He concluded a peace with *France* in 1550, and restor'd *Boulogne* upon condition that *Henry* should pay the King of *England* 400000 gold crowns. *Scotland* was also comprehended in this peace, upon which King *Edward* desisted from his marriage, and restor'd the towns he had taken from the *Scots*.

Q. What remarkable actions did the young King perform during his reign?

A. He confirm'd the grant made by King *Henry VIII.* to the city of *London*, of *Christ's* and *St. Bartholomew's* Hospitals; and founded *Bridewell* and *St. Thomas's* Hospitals,

tals, and several schools. He also encourag'd trade, and granted large privileges to the merchants; and was consulting the best methods for establishing the reformation in *England*, when a consumption brought him to his end.

Q. When did he die?

A. The 6th of *July*, anno 1553, in the sixteenth year of his age, whereof he had reign'd six.

Q. What were the qualities of this young Prince?

A. He had a great genius, and was perfectly acquainted with the interest of his kingdom; he was happy in a sweet temper, so that he would not allow any person to be put to death upon a religious account; however, *Dudley* duke of *Northumberland* observing he had the reformation very much at heart, made his advantage of it, by engaging him to disinherit the Princesses, *Mary* and *Elizabeth*, his sisters.

Q. What view had *Dudley* in this?

A. He intended to set his own family upon the throne?

Q. On what were his pretensions founded?

A. He had married the lord *Guilford*, his fourth son, to *Jane Grey*, eldest daughter of the duke of *Suffolk*, whom King *Edward* declar'd his heir.

Q. What pretensions had the lady *Jane* to the crown?

A. *Mary* daughter to *Henry VII.* Queen-dowager of *France*, took *Charles Brandon* duke of *Suffolk* for her second husband, by whom she had one daughter, nam'd *Frances*, who was marry'd to *Henry Grey*, marquiss of *Dorset*, and afterwards duke of *Suffolk*, to whom she brought three daughters, whereof the lady *Jane* was the eldest.

Q. Did *Dudley* succeed in his design?

A. As he knew that it would be scarce possible for him to put the King's last will and testament in execution, unless he first got *Mary* and *Elizabeth* into his hands, he order'd them in the King's name, to come to court; but the earl of *Arundel* discover'd his design and King *Edward*'s death to Princess *Mary*, who, upon that notice, withdrew to *Framlingham-Castle*, in the county of *Suffolk*.

(158)

Q. Did this disappointment prevail with *Dudley* to lay aside his designs?

A. No; for immediately upon *King Edward's* death, he publish'd his last will and testament, and caused the lady *Jane* to be proclaim'd Queen of *England* on the 10th of *July*; and notwithstanding this excellent lady's disinclination, she was acknowledg'd Queen in *London*: but as her ambitious father was very much hated, upon the approaches of Queen *Mary's* army, the lady *Jane* was universally abandon'd.

Q. Did not one *Ket* a tanner, occasion great disturbances in this reign?

A. He made an insurrection in *Norfolk* in 1549, where he got together 20000 men, and defeated the marquis of *Northampton*, who had been sent against him with only 1100 men, and drove him from *Norwich*; but *John Dudley*, then earl of *Warwick*, having attack'd him at the head of a considerable body of troops, *Ket* was defeated, and afterwards hang'd in *Norwich*.

MARY, XLII^d Monarch of England.

From 1553 to 1558.

Popes.		Emperor.	
JULIUS III.	1550	CHARLES V.	1519
MARCELLUS II.	1555	King of France.	
PAUL IV.	1555	HENRY II.	1547

Q. WHO succeeded *Edward VI*?

A. *Mary*, his sister, daughter of *Catharine of Arragon*, who, as was before observ'd, had been disinherited, as also her sister Princess *Elizabeth*.

Q. Where was she proclaim'd Queen?

A. First at *Norwich*, and afterwards in all parts of the kingdom, in 1553, after the ruin of *Dudley's* party.

Q. In what manner, was it ruin'd?

A. No sooner was *Dudley* retir'd at some distance from the

the city, than the earls of *Arundel* and *Pembroke*, together with the mayor and some of the aldermen who before had taken an oath of fidelity to the lady *Jane*, declar'd for *Mary*, and having proclaim'd her Queen, summon'd the duke of *Suffolk*, who had shut himself up in the tower with the lady *Jane* his daughter, to surrender that fortress into their hands, which he accordingly did, when he found there was no possibility of his defending his daughter's claim.

Q. Did *Dudley* make his escape?

A. No: and he was oblig'd to submit himself to Queen *Mary's* mercy.

Q. Did she spare him?

A. She sentenc'd him to lose his head, which was done on the 22^d of *August*, and afterwards gave orders for the beheading of a great number of persons who had been his accomplices. The lady *Jane Grey* and the lord *Guildford* her husband were sent back to the tower after their condemnation. The duke of *Suffolk* was set at liberty; but a little after, he join'd in a conspiracy with Sir *Thomas Wyatt*, who having got together 6000 men, enter'd *London*, whose inhabitants he firmly supposed would take up arms; but the very contrary happen'd, and he was oblig'd to surrender himself prisoner. This rebellion hasten'd the death of the lady *Jane*, who was executed the 12th of *February*, 1554, after having seen the body of her husband, who had been beheaded pass by. The duke of *Suffolk* was beheaded the 21st of the same month, and Sir *Thomas Wyatt* the 11th of *April*.

Q. In what manner did Queen *Mary* begin her reign?

A. She set the *Roman* Catholicks at liberty; restor'd the depriv'd popish prelates to their Sees, and allow'd a general liberty of conscience till the sitting of the Parliament, by an act whereof, the exercise of any other religion, but the *Roman* Catholick, was prohibited; she also repeal'd several acts which had been made in the preceding reigns.

Q. Did she give no other testimonies of her zeal?

A. Having strengthened herself by the alliance of *Philip II.* King of *Spain*, whom she marry'd at *Winchester*

the 25th of *July*, 1554, she call'd a new Parliament, in which King *Philip* and herself presided. Cardinal *Pole* made a very fine speech in it, after which both houses suppress'd the reform'd religion; and restor'd matters to the same state, in which they had been before the divorce of *Henry VIII*; and the cardinal abovemention'd reconcil'd the nation to the church of *Rome*, after having absolv'd it from all ecclesiastical censures.

Q. Was a general obedience paid to these laws?

A. Great numbers adher'd strenuously to the profession of the true religion, whom Queen *Mary* punish'd with great severity: burnt about 300 of these, among whom were *Cranmer* archbishop of *Canterbury*, *Ridley* bishop of *London*, *Latimer* of *Worcester*, *Hooper* of *Gloucester*, and *Ferrar* of *St. David's*.

Q. Was Queen *Mary* engag'd in any wars?

A. Yes; for at the instigation of the King her husband, she came to a rupture with *France*, (contrary to the oath he had taken) and sent him 8000 men into *Flanders*, in 1557, which very much contributed to the victory of *St. Quintin*.

Q. Did she reap any advantage from this war?

A. No; and the duke of *Guise*, general of the *French* army, dispossessed the *English*, in *January* 1558, of *Calais*, *Guines*, and the castle of *Hames*, and all they then possess'd in *France*.

Q. With what temper did the *English* receive this news?

A. With great disgust; and in the transports of their rage, they exclaim'd publicly against Queen's *Mary's* administration; and 'tis said, that the grief she conceiv'd on that account, and the aversion which King *Philip* had for her, contributed as much to her dissolution, as a dropsy with which she was afflicted.

Q. When did she die?

A. On the 17th of *November* 1558, at forty-three years of age, after having reign'd five years, four months, and eleven days.

Q. What were the qualities of this Queen?

A. She was extremely bigotted, and this was join'd to a severe revengeful temper, which she endeavour'd

to

to confound with a zeal for religion: but when there was no possibility of uniting them, she plainly shew'd that she was as much inclin'd to cruelty from her natural disposition as from zeal. We meet with but one good action in all Queen *Mary's* conduct, viz. her rejecting the proposal which the *Spanish* ambassador had made her, of making herself absolute, and trampling under foot the laws of the kingdom, and the privileges of the people. She did not discover much capacity in the government of her kingdoms, and the loss of *Calais* will be an eternal blot to her reign, were there no other more odious circumstance in it.

ELIZABETH, XLIII^a *Monarch of* *England.*

From 1558 to 1603.

<i>Popes.</i>		<i>Emperors.</i>	
PAUL IV.	1555	FERDINAND I.	1558
PIUS IV.	1559	MAXIMILIAN II.	1564
PIUS V.	1565	RODOLPHUS II.	1576
GREGORY XIII.	1572	<i>Kings of France.</i>	
SIXTUS V.	1585	HENRY II.	1547
URBAN VII.	1590	FRANCIS II.	1559
GREGORY XIV.	1590	CHARLES IX.	1560
INNOCENT IX.	1591	HENRY III.	1574
CLEMENT VIII.	1592	HENRY IV.	1589

2. DID Queen *Mary* leave any issue behind her?

A. No; Queen *Elizabeth* her sister, daughter of *Henry VIII.* and *Anne Boleyn*, succeeded to the crown, at twenty-five years of age.

2. Describe the person of Queen *Elizabeth*.

A. She was tolerably handsome, and had a grand, noble and majestic air. But that which made her more agreeable to the common people, was a certain affability

that was natural to her, and which won the esteem and affection of those to whom she spoke.

Q. What were the qualities of her mind?

A. She was mistress of a great deal of wit, and of an upright and solid judgment, join'd to a great oeconomy. She was learn'd, spoke several languages, and had so refin'd a turn for politicks, as made her the wonder of all the sovereigns her contemporaries. She never reveal'd any of her secrets, but always conceal'd them from her favourites and chief ministers, who submitted to her with an implicit obedience; and these she punish'd with great severity, whenever they discover'd any inclination to assume the least share of the sovereign authority to themselves. But that which above all things ought to gain her esteem, is, her having made the *English* enjoy a felicity that was unknown to their ancestors, under most of the Kings her predecessors; and her extending their navigation and commerce, more than it had ever been before.

Q. Was she learn'd?

A. *Camden* assures us, that she could speak five or six languages; she is applauded for the unaffectedness of her carriage; her sincerity, affability, friendship; her zeal for justice, liberality, and magnificence; to which we must add, her bounty to all persons of distinguish'd merit; the protection she gave the distressed, and the great generosity with which she assisted them in their wants.

Q. For what is she chiefly commended?

A. For having establish'd the protestant religion: She declar'd herself head of the church, and assum'd the title of *Supream Governour thereof, within her Kingdom, both in spirituals and temporals*: in a word, *Elizabeth* set the church of *England* on the same foot in which it was under *Edward VI.* She put to death several Jesuits, who were perpetually conspiring against her person and government.

Q. For what other things is she applauded?

A. For having supported and assisted the Protestants of *France, Scotland, and the Low-Countries*: but the death

of *Mary Queen of Scots*, whom *Elizabeth* sacrific'd to her own safety, is a fault that cannot be excus'd.

Q. Pray relate the particulars of this unfortunate Queen's story?

A. She was daughter to *James V.* King of *Scotland*, and of *Mary of Lorrain*, eldest daughter of *Claude* duke of *Guise*, and widow of *Lewis* duke of *Longueville*; she marry'd *Francis II.* King of *France*, when she assum'd the title of *Queen of England*, upon pretence that *Elizabeth* was illegitimate, and consequently unworthy to sit on the throne.

Q. Had *Queen Mary* any just pretensions to the crown of *England*?

A. She was grand-daughter of *James IV.* and of *Margaret*, eldest daughter of *Henry VII.*; and it was by virtue of this right, that *James Stewart*, *Queen Mary's* son, was recogniz'd King of *England* after the death of *Queen Elizabeth*.

Q. Pray relate some further particulars concerning this Queen.

A. Being now a widow, by the death of her husband *Francis II.* she return'd in 1561, into *Scotland*, whereof she was Queen; this kingdom was at that time divided into two factions, viz. the *Roman Catholics* and *Protestants*, with the former of whom she join'd; but judging that she was too weak to support herself against the latter, who were headed by *James Stewart*, earl of *Murray*, her bastard-brother; she marry'd *Henry Stewart*, lord *Darnley*, son to the earl of *Lenox*, the handsomest man at that time in *Great-Britain*.

Q. Did not her marriage bring her into fresh troubles?

A. Yes; she had an extreme disgust for her new consort, which soon became publick. *Henry*, on the other side, grew jealous of one *David Rizzo*, son to a musician of *Turin*; who so well insinuated himself into the Queen's favour, that she made him her prime minister. If *Buchanan* may be credited, she us'd to practise scandalous familiarities with *Rizzo*; and *Henry's* suspicions were strengthened by *Rizzo's* enemies.

Q. What was the consequence of *Henry's* jealousy?

A. He

A. He found *Rexxo* in the cabinet of the Queen, who was at table, and caus'd him to be kill'd by *Douglas*, even at the Queen's door; she begging very earnestly to have his life sav'd. She was confin'd for some months, but put on so artful a fondness for her husband, that she escap'd from him, and recall'd the earl of *Murray*, whom she knew to be a very able statesman, and whom her husband had removed.

Q. Was the earl grateful for this favour?

A. Yes; but the earl of *Bothwell*, the sworn enemy of the earl of *Murray*, having got the same place in *Mary's* heart which *Rixxo* had formerly enjoy'd, advis'd the Queen to remove *Murray*, which she accordingly did. The King being grievously insulted by the Queen his consort, withdrew to the earl of *Lenox's*, his father. The King was afterwards kill'd on *February 10, 1566*, as was suspected, by the artifices of *Bothwell*, and not without the Queen's consent and connivance, who a little after marry'd *Bothwell* at *Edinburgh*.

Q. What follow'd after their marriage?

A. The earls of *Argyle*, *Morton*, *Marr*, *Athol*, and *Glencarn*, who only sought an opportunity to revenge themselves of *Bothwell*, rais'd an army in order to dissolve this marriage. The Queen march'd out against them at the head of an army; but her troops having abandon'd her, she was oblig'd to put herself into the hands of the confederate lords, who carry'd her to *Edinburgh*, from whence she was, two days after, sent close prisoner to *Lochlevin-Castle*. *Bothwell* escap'd, and withdrew first to *Dunbar*, and afterwards to one of the *Orcades*, where he turn'd pirate. He at last went to *Denmark*, where he liv'd ten years in the extremest misery.

Q. What became of *Mary* afterwards?

A. The earl of *Murray*, who had been about three months in *France*, being now return'd to *Scotland*, got the sovereign authority into his own hands, in the name of young Prince *James*, Queen *Mary's* son, by *Henry Stuart*. But *May 2, 1568*, the Queen escap'd out of her confinement in *Lochlevin-Castle*.

Q. Did no body take up arms in her defence?

A. Some

A. Some *Roman* Catholick lords rais'd an army of 6000 men, in order to punish the earl of *Murray*, but they were defeated, and *Queen Mary* was forc'd to fly into *England*.

Q. Did she meet with a sanctuary there?

A. No; *Queen Elizabeth* threw her into prison, where she continu'd for eighteen years together. The reason of *Queen Elizabeth*'s acting in this manner, was, either to revenge herself for the affront which *Queen Mary* had put upon her by a manifesto, in which she assum'd the title of *Queen of England*, and call'd *Queen Elizabeth* an usurper, and a bastard; or else because *Queen Mary* secretly fomented the conspiracies that were carry'd on by the enemies of *Queen Elizabeth*; but the chief reason was, the jealousy *Elizabeth* had conceiv'd against her, because the right of *Queen Mary* was often put upon a level with hers; and her being afraid that *Mary* would deprive her of the crown.

Q. Had this afflicted Princess no friend to take her part?

A. Most Princes in *Europe* employ'd very earnest solicitations in order to procure her liberty; *Charles IX.* and *Henry III.* Kings of *France*, us'd entreaties as well as threats; but they were far from being formidable, by reason of the civil wars that rag'd in their dominions.

Q. What pretence did *Queen Elizabeth* make use of?

A. She imputed to *Queen Mary* the horrid crime which *Bothwell* had perpetrated; and of which she did not very well clear herself. After this accusation, *Queen Elizabeth* sought for fresh crimes to lay to her charge; and accordingly she accus'd her of being an accomplice in certain conspiracies that had been form'd against her person, and made this the subject of her prosecution.

Q. What was the result of *Queen Mary*'s trial?

A. *Queen Elizabeth* caus'd her to be condemn'd to be beheaded, which accordingly was executed the 8th of *February*, 1587, in *Fotheringay-Castle*, in spite of all the remonstrances of *Bellevue*, whom *Henry III.* had sent in order to get this sentence revok'd. Nevertheless,

if.

if we may credit *du Maurier*, *Bellievre* had secret orders to solicit the execution of the Queen of *Scots*, altho' he pretended to have a quite different commission.

Q. Did not Queen *Elizabeth* discover the utmost sorrow, when news was brought her that Queen *Mary* was executed?

A. She gave as strong testimonies of her affliction, as sighs and lamentations could give; she also drove her privy-counsellors from her presence, and gave orders for their being prosecuted in the Star-chamber.

Q. What advantages did she procure the *English*?

A. She made in 1569, a very advantageous treaty of commerce with *John Basilowitz*, great duke of *Moscow*; join'd to a personal alliance which that Prince desir'd, by which they reciprocally engag'd to give each other an asylum, in case either should be drove out of his dominions.

Q. Was Queen *Elizabeth* engag'd in no wars?

A. But few, and she maintain'd *England* in peace and tranquillity, and succour'd her allies, with troops. The republick of *Holland* is infinitely indebted to this Queen, and in a great measure owes its establishment to her. She assisted the Protestants of *France* with men and money; and also King *Henry IV.* in like manner, which facilitated his way to the throne. She likewise furnish'd *Don Antonio*, who assum'd the title of King of *Portugal*, with men and ships.

Q. Had she no other wars than those in which her allies engag'd her?

A. She sent fleets in 1596, on the coasts of *Spain*, who took and sack'd *Cales*, possess'd themselves of *Pharo* in *Algarve*, and made a dreadful havock all along the coast.

Q. What was the occasion of all these hostilities?

A. Queen *Elizabeth* did it in order to prevent a fresh invasion from *Spain*, and at the same time to revenge herself upon *Philip II.* who in 1588, had invaded *England* with that prodigious fleet, to which he gave the name of the *Invincible Armado*. It consisted of one hundred and thirty-two ships, besides twenty caravels for the service of the army, and ten salves with six oars a-piece;

piece; having on board 8766 sailors, 2088 gally-slaves, 21855 soldiers; and 3165 pieces of cannon, and was furnish'd with ammunition and provision for six months. The duke *de Medina Celi* was admiral of it, and the duke of *Parma* was to join this fleet with an army of 30,000 foot, and 1800 horse; but he could not execute his design, the *English* and *Dutch* having prevented his putting to sea, by blocking up the ports of *Flanders*, with forty men of war.

Q. Did this fleet perform any exploits equal to what the world expected from it?

A. No; part of it was lost by storms, and the lord *Howard* lord high-admiral of *England*, with *Drake*, (who had sail'd round the world) *Hawkins*, and *Forbisher* vice-admirals, meeting the *Spanish* fleet in the *British* channel, took, burnt, or dispers'd the rest; so that of their 132 ships, only 97 return'd to *Spain*. The loss the *Spaniards* sustain'd in this expedition was so great, that they have never since been able to recover it. The admiral *Galleas* was taken by the *English*, after making a very vigorous defence, in which *Hugo de Moncada* who commanded it, lost his life. Queen *Elizabeth* return'd thanks to God for this deliverance; settled a pension on the admiral, and on all those who had been wounded. Sir *Walter Raleigh* made two expeditions to *America*, but they prov'd unsuccessful.

Q. Was she ever marry'd?

A. No; her policy, and her love for liberty, was so great, that she always had an aversion to marriage.

Q. In what does her policy appear upon this occasion?

A. All the young Princes of *Europe*, or such as had either sons or brothers to dispose of in marriage, paid her the utmost regard; for she always left them some room to hope, and never gave them an absolute denial; and 'twas probably this very consideration, that engag'd all the young *English* nobleman of high birth, to be continually about her person.

Q. Who were Queen *Elizabeth*'s favourites?

A. *Robert Dudley*, son to the last duke of *Northumberland*. She created him earl of *Leicester*, and distinguish'd him

him above all the lords of her court. Her second favourite was *Robert Devereux* earl of *Essex*, whom she honour'd with several employments and marks of her favour. This made him vain and proud, and upon some disgust he had receiv'd, he made a conspiracy against the Queen. He did not succeed in it, and was beheaded with some of his accomplices. The 25th of *February*, 1601, the day appointed for his execution, the Queen appear'd a little irresolute, which has furnish'd abundant matter for romances and plays, in which she is represented as tortured by love and rage. She was then in her sixty-eighth year, in which 'tis not natural for the impulses of love to be very violent.

Q. Was Queen *Elizabeth's* reign exempt from troubles?

A. No; not to mention the Jesuits, many of whom were executed for conspiring against the Queen and the government; the earl of *Tir-oen* form'd a design to drive the *English* out of *Ireland*, and took up arms in the county of *Ulster*. The earl of *Essex* abovemention'd was sent against him at the head of a fine army, but did nothing. The Queen was so offended at this, that she caus'd him to be put under an arrest. She afterwards appointed *Charles Blount*, lord *Montjoy*, vice-roy of *Ireland*. He defeated *Tir-oen* on several occasions, and oblig'd him to have recourse to the Queen's clemency.

Q. When did Queen *Elizabeth* die?

A. The 24th of *March*, 1603, in the seventieth year of her age, and the forty-fifth of her reign.

JAMES I. XLIVth King of England.

And the first of Great-Britain.

From 1602 to 1625.

Popes.

Emperors.

CLEMENT VIII.	1592	RODOLPHUS II.	1576
LEO IX.	1605	MATHIAS I.	1612
PAUL III.	1605	FERDINAND II.	1619
GREGORY XV.	1621	Kings of France.	
URBAN VIII.	1623	HENRY IV.	1589
		LEWIS XIII.	1610

Q. WHO succeeded Queen Elizabeth?
 A. James VI, King of Scotland, and first of England; son of the unfortunate Mary Queen of Scots, and Henry Stuart lord Darnly.

Q. Where was this Prince born?

A. At Edinburgh-Castle, the 19th of June, 1566; and was baptiz'd a Roman Catholick in the month of December, but afterwards educated in the Protestant religion, and had the famous historian Buchanan for his tutor. As the earl of Murray had seiz'd upon the Queen his mother, the crown was set on King James's head, in 1567, and the abovementioned earl govern'd under him, in quality of regent.

Q. How long time was the earl regent?

A. Till January 23^d, 1570, when he was assassinated. He was succeeded in the regency by the earl of Lenox, and others, till 1578, when the King took the government upon himself. In 1603, Elizabeth, Queen of England, recogniz'd him for her lawful successor; he came to London, and was there crown'd the 25th of July, on St. James's day, of the same year.

Q. Describe the qualities of this King.

A. He

A. He was a learn'd and liberal Prince; at one time he would express the greatest zeal for religion, and at others would be as lukewarm: he was naturally as pacific, as *Queen Elizabeth* his predecessor had been haughty and intriguing. Hence some saucy wags took the liberty to fix a pasquinade upon the door of his cabinet; in which they gave him the title of *Queen*, and that of *King* to * *Elizabeth*. 'Tis certain that *England* was never in a less flourishing condition than under his reign: that the *English* were expos'd to the insults and raillery of other nations, and that all blam'd the King universally for it.

Q. Did not he endeavour to procure his mother's release?

A. He sent several embassies to *Queen Elizabeth* to intercede for her, but did not dare to take any further steps, because *Queen Elizabeth* threatned to disinherit him, in case he attempted any thing against her interest.

Q. What memorable action did he perform after he was declar'd King of *England*?

A. Upon his coming to the crown, he promis'd to maintain in their utmost force, the several laws which *Queen Elizabeth* had enacted against the *Roman* Catholics; and commanded the priests and Jesuits to depart out of his dominions. A little before his coronation, was discover'd an intended conspiracy: viz. to raise to the throne the lady *Arabella Stuart*, his cousin german; and some of the conspirators were executed. The learned and worthy *Sir Walter Raleigh* was accus'd of being concern'd in it, and after having been confin'd twelve years in the tower, was beheaded *October 29th, 1618.* *Arabella Stuart* died in the tower. A few years after, a horrid conspiracy was form'd. Some *Roman* Catholics, of whom *Catesby* was the chief, intended to destroy the King and Parliament, by blowing up the Parliament-House with gunpowder, on the 5th of *November, 1605*, but the plot was happily discover'd by a letter. Several were executed, and among the rest *Guy Fawkes*, who was to set fire to the train.

* *Elizabeth was a King, but James is a Queen.*

Q. What

Q. What title did the King assume, in order to put an end to the disputes between the *English* and the *Scots*?

A. That of King of *Great-Britain*.

Q. Wherein did he shew a particular favour for *Scotland*?

A. He establish'd a royal council in that kingdom, or rather continu'd the old one; and this he invested with a much larger authority than it had formerly enjoy'd when the Kings resided in *Scotland*.

Q. Was not he engag'd in some Wars?

A. No; he maintain'd his dominions in a profound but inglorious peace, and employ'd himself in negotiations. He nevertheless sent some troops to *Frederick Elector Palatine* and King of *Bohemia*, (his son-in-law) whom the Emperor *Ferdinand* and the King of *Spain* were dispossessing of his dominions. King *James* also sent troops to the *Dutch*.

Q. What was King *James's* most serious employment?

A. The study of divinity; and he wrote several pieces, in order to put an end to the disputes, that arose between those who were for episcopal government, and the dissenters in his kingdoms.

Q. Who were the King's favourites?

A. He had several, but especially distinguish'd *Robert Carr*, earl of *Somerset*, and *George Villiers* duke of *Buckingham*.

Q. What illustrious men flourish'd under King *James*?

A. The most famous were *Sir Walter Raleigh*, author of a history of the world; and the lord-chancellor *Bacon*, whose learning has been the admiration of all *Europe*.

Q. Where did King *James* die?

A. In his palace at *Theobalds* of a tertian ague after three weeks illness; he died on the 27th of *March*, 1625, in the 59th year of his age.

Q. How many years had he reign'd?

A. Twenty-two over *Great-Britain*, and fifty-eight over *Scotland*.

Q. Whom did he marry?

Q 2

A. *Anna*

A. Anne daughter of Frederick II. King of Denmark and Norway, and of Sophia of Mecklenburg.

Q. What children had he by her?

A. Seven; namely, Henry Prince of Wales, who died unmarried the 6th of November, 1612; he was one of the most accomplish'd Princes that ever liv'd, not only in England, but in all Europe, if we may give credit to the English historians: Robert who died very young; Charles I. King of England, born in Scotland the 19th of November, 1600. Elizabeth, marry'd the 14th of February, 1613, to Frederick V. Elector Palatine, and afterwards King of Bohemia. Margaret, born the 24th of December, 1598, in Scotland, and died young; Mary, born in England, in 1605, dy'd an infant; and lastly Sophia, born at Greenwich, June 21st, 1606, and who dy'd the next day.

CHARLES I. XLVth King of England.

And the second of Great-Britain.

From 1625 to 1648-9.

<i>Popes.</i>		FERDINAND III.	1637
URBAN VIII.	1623	<i>Kings of France.</i>	
INNOCENT X.	1644	LEWIS XIII.	1610
<i>Emperors.</i>		LEWIS XIV.	1643
FERDINAND II.	1619		

Q. WHO succeeded King James I?

A. Charles I. his son, who was crown'd February 2, 1625-6.

Q. What were the qualities of this Prince?

A. He was religious, chaste, sober, gentle, affable, and brave upon occasion; he had a great penetration, a solid judgment, and in a word was an excellent man; yet some historians say, that he was too fond of the Prerogative,

rogative, and had the weakness to let himself be govern'd by his wife and his favourites; and that, by their persuasions he executed several things, which first made his subjects murmur, and afterwards break out into open rebellion.

Q. What actions did King *Charles I.* perform in the beginning of his reign?

A. In 1625, he sent a fleet on the coast of *Spain*, to intercept the galleons, but it return'd without having done any thing. In 1628, at the urgent solicitations of the duke of *Buckingham* his favourite, he sent succours to the Protestants of *Rochel*, which was threatned with a siege, but they did not meet with a wish'd for success; for they were hinder'd by a barricado, from approaching near enough to relieve the town, which was taken in their presence. *George Villiers* duke of *Buckingham*, who had the chief command in this expedition, was stabb'd at *Portsmouth*, before the sailing of the fleet, on the 23^d of *August*, by *Felton*, a lieutenant of foot.

Q. Had King *Charles* no wars within his kingdom?

A. Yes; and these prov'd so fatal, that they brought him to a most unworthy end, as will be shewn in the sequel.

Q. What was it that occasion'd so sad a catastrophe?

A. The discontents of the *Scots*, who were the first that took up arms.

Q. What was the subject of their discontent?

A. The reformation had been receiv'd in *Scotland*, by publick authority, under the reign of Queen *Mary*, in 1560, a little before the death of *Francis II.* and whilst the Queen his widow was yet in *France*. In 1566, the general assembly approv'd solemnly the discipline of the church of *Switzerland*, and an equality between the ministers. Queen *Mary* herself confirm'd this decree. Nevertheless, she shew'd but little regard for it, by her restoring publicly the archbishop of *St. Andrews*, notwithstanding the opposition of the assembly.

Q. Was this the only subject the *Scots* had for complaint?

A. King *James* would have establish'd the church of *Scotland*, upon the same foundation with that of *England*, and accordingly had restor'd episcopal government in all its lustre; but as King *Charles* intended to go thro' with this design, he disgusted all the Presbyterians in that kingdom; the nobles secretly fomented their discontent, and no sooner was the King gone out of *Scotland*, than it broke out openly.

Q. What was their first attempt?

A. They began by meeting in a riotous manner, and dispersing several seditious manifestos, and protestations; and a little after refus'd to make use of that form of prayer which the King had sent them; and, at last, abusing his majesty's goodness, they, in 1637, subscrib'd that famous league, to which they gave the name of the COVENANT.

Q. What measures did the King take in order to put a stop to these disorders?

A. He would have annull'd the covenant; but the *Scots* finding he made no preparation to force them to a compliance, laugh'd at the order he had sent them; and thereupon they assembled a general assembly at *Glasgow*, where they abolish'd episcopacy, and repeal'd the several declarations which King *Charles*, and the King his father, had made upon that head.

Q. Did not the King punish their insolence?

A. He would have done it, but finding the nation highly disgusted, on account of some of his illegal and arbitrary proceedings, and especially because he had not called a Parliament since *March* 1629, he did not think it proper to call one at this juncture, to enable himself to levy forces. However, he commanded the nobility to meet at *York*, with as many horse as they could raise. Going afterwards to *York*, he put himself at the head of his army, and set out towards *Scotland*.

Q. What success did the King's troops meet with?

A. The rebels finding themselves unable to make a resistance, demanded a peace, which was concluded the 17th of *June*, 1639; and notwithstanding that the King was the most powerful, and thereby enabled to chastise their insolence, he nevertheless consented to a treaty
that

that was as injurious to his honour, as advantageous to the *Scotch*.

Q. Was this peace lasting?

A. No; King *Charles* being resolv'd not to suffer the suppression of episcopacy, broke it in 1640, and assembled an army to invade *Scotland*; but the *Scotch* army got the start of him, and the King not having opportunity to continue the war, granted them a peace the 7th of *August*, 1641.

Q. Were the *English* more submissive than the *Scots*?

A. They carry'd matters to the utmost excess, in the famous parliament which King *Charles* conven'd in 1640; and declar'd themselves perpetual, in opposition to the ancient right of the Kings of *England*.

Q. What did this parliament do?

A. They remedied all their real or pretended grievances, and abolish'd all the taxes. They oppos'd all the King's designs; attack'd such of his servants as were most zealously attach'd to him; beheaded archbishop *Laud*, and the earl of *Strafford*; declar'd open war against both the King and monarchy; enter'd into a confederacy with the *Scotch* rebels, in order to overthrow the regal authority, and to set up a popular government.

Q. Did not the King dissolve them?

A. He would have done it, but *April* 28th, 1642, the King having refus'd to sign a bill which the Parliament caus'd to be presented to him, for the establishing a militia, both sides prepar'd for war; the King levied an army, and headed it himself, and in the beginning of 1642, (after having attempted in vain to become master of *Hull*) advanc'd to fight the rebels. Several engagements happen'd between his and the Parliament's forces, from the year 1642 to 1645; particularly at *Edgehill*, *Tadcaster*, and *Gisborough*, *Saltheath*, *Braddock-down*, *Chaldgrave-field*, two at *Newbury*, at *Stratton*, *Lansdown*, *Roundway-down*, *Alresford*, *Cropey-bridge*, and *Langport*. But there was no decisive battle between them, till the army commanded by Prince *Rupert*, nephew to the King, was routed at *Marston-Moor*, by the earl of *Manchester*, who commanded that of the Parliament. The
King

King afterwards was himself defeated at *Naseby* the 14th of *June*, 1645, by the lord *Fairfax*. These two defeats reduc'd him to a very unhappy condition. The King after these losses, withdrew into *Wales*, and coming out of it, was beat at *Chester*, after which he retir'd to *Oxford*.

Q. What measures did the King take?

A. Upon Sir *Thomas Fairfax*'s approach to *Oxford*, out of which the King was oblig'd to fly, to prevent his being taken prisoner, not knowing where to go for safety, he went over to the *Scotch* army, on the 5th of *May*, 1646, imagining that they were less exasperated against him than the *English*.

Q. What reception did he meet with from them?

A. They at first paid him the honours due to a crown'd head, but at the same time they watch'd him so narrowly, that he was in reality their prisoner.

Q. Did he continue long among them?

A. No; for the *Scots* deliver'd him into the hands of the commissioners of the Parliament, on the 23^d of *January*, 1646-7, who imprison'd him for a considerable time in different places. We are to observe, that 'twas neither the *Scotch*, nor the *Presbyterians*, nor the Parliament; but the *Independants*, who hated them all mortally, that put this unfortunate Prince to death.

Q. Did not the King attempt to recover his liberty?

A. He found an opportunity on the 11th of *November*, to escape from his confinement at *Hampton-Court*, and afterwards fled to the *Isle of Wight*.

Q. Did he continue there unmolested for any time?

A. No; he was seiz'd by a party of soldiers sent by *Cromwel* for that purpose, who carried him prisoner to *Hurst-Castle*, afterwards to *Windsor*, and at last to *St. James's-House*.

Q. How did they dispose of him after his arrival?

A. The House of Commons, which was compos'd of *Independants*, establish'd a pretended high court of justice to judge the King, (tho' the House of Lords would not consent to this) and nominated as judges, general *Fairfax*, *Oliver Cromwel*, *Henry Ireton*, Sir *Hardress Waller*, *Philip Skippon*, and 145 more, all *Independants*; *John Bradshaw* was president of this court.

Q. What

Q. What was the substance of the charge?

A. 1. He was accus'd of having levy'd war against the Parliament, and the people they represented; with a design to erect and uphold in himself an unlimited and tyrannical power, to rule according to his will, and to overthrow the rights and liberties of the people.

2. For having hereby been the cause of all the blood that had been shed for those five years, during which the civil wars had continu'd. And finally for having fomented the rebellion of the *Irish*, who had massacred 40000 *English* in 1641.

Q. In what manner did they carry on this tryal?

A. They oblig'd the King to appear four times successively before this infamous tribunal; the president requiring him every time to answer to the above-mention'd articles.

Q. Did he so?

A. He refus'd to acknowledge the authority of that court, and of those who had establish'd it. On the other side, the court would not once hear the reasons on which he grounded his refusal to recognize its jurisdiction. It still suppos'd, that the authority which had establish'd it was sufficient; and 'twas this very circumstance the King would combat, and which he was not allow'd to do. At last finding that he could not be heard on this head, he gave his reasons in a memorial.

Q. Was it of any service to him?

A. Altho' he insisted that they had not the least right to judge him, and that there was no jurisdiction upon earth could call him to account, his refusal to plead was look'd upon, according to the laws of *England*, as a confession. A little before sentence was pronounc'd upon him, he desir'd instantly to be heard before the two houses; declaring he had a very important proposal to make them, but his request was not granted. 'Tis generally thought that his design was, to propose to the two houses his abdicating of the crown, in favour of Prince *Charles*, his eldest son.

Q. What sentence did this court pass upon the King?

A. He was condemn'd to lose his head, and the sentence was read in his presence the 27th of *January*, 1648-9.

Q. Was

Q. Was it executed?

A. Yes; on *Tuesday* the 30th of the same month, on a scaffold which had been rais'd in the street, near the windows of the banquetting-house at *White-hall*. The King suffer'd death with great constancy, and without discovering the least symptom of weakness or surprize. His body, after having been expos'd some days to the view of the people, in one of the apartments at *White-hall*, was carry'd to *Windsor*, and interr'd in *St. George's* chapel.

Q. Pray relate to me the particulars of his family?

A. In 1625, he marry'd *Henrietta Maria*, daughter to *Henry IV.* of *France*, and of *Mary of Medicis*, by whom he had four sons, namely, *Charles-James*, who died immediately after his birth; *Charles II.* and *James II.* Kings of *Great-Britain*, and *Henry* duke of *Gloucester*, who died in *England* at about twenty years of age, a little after the restoration.

Q. Had he any daughters?

A. He had had five, three of whom were then living: *Mary*, born the 4th of *November*, 1631, marry'd the 2^d of *May*, 1641, *William Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, father of King *William III*; *Elizabeth*, born the 28th of *December*, 1635, died unmarried in 1650; *Anne*, born the 17th of *March*, 1637, died in her infancy; and *Catharine*, who died almost as soon; *Henrietta*, born at *Exeter* the 16th of *June*, 1644, marry'd in 1661, to *Philip* duke of *Orleans*, sole brother to *Lewis XIV.* King of *France*. She died in 1670.

Q. What other remarkable particulars happen'd in this reign?

A. In 1635, there was presented to the King, one *Thomas Parr*, aged 152 years, and who enjoy'd a perfect health. He was born the last year of *Edward IV.*

INTER-

INTER-REGNUM.

The Commonwealth of England.

From 1649 to 1653.

Popes.

Emperors.

INNOCENT X.	1644	FERDINAND III.	1637
ALEXANDER VII.	1655	LEOPOLD	1658
		King of France.	
		LEWIS XIV.	1643

Q. DID the tragical death of *Charles I.* put an end to the hatred of the independants?

A. The House of Commons would not allow him to be buried with the least pomp; caus'd several inscriptions in his honour to be eraz'd, and set up others in the same places, in which the odious epithet of Tyrant was given him.

Q. Did they go any farther?

A. They publish'd a prohibition with regard to the proclaiming *Charles Stuart*, the late King's eldest son, or any other person whatsoever, upon penalty of being punish'd as in cases of high-treason. They afterwards pass'd an act for the abolishing of the regal power, as useless, burthensome and dangerous. And some time after, put a price upon his head; and the duke of *Gloucester* and Princess *Elizabeth*, who were in their hands, were sent to the countess of *Leicester*, who was entrusted with the care of their education.

Q. What form of government now prevail'd in England?

A. The House of Commons annull'd that of the lords, after which they set up a *common-wealth*, and oblig'd all those who possess'd any publick post, to take out new

new grants and fresh oaths to qualify themselves for holding the same.

Q. Did the other kingdoms join with them in their proceedings?

A. The *Irish* recogniz'd King *Charles II.* as King, and put the marquis of *Ormond* at their head, who was defeated before *Dublin* by colonel *Jones*, on the 2^d of *August*, and oblig'd to retire in expectation of a reinforcement which had been promis'd him.

Q. What measures did the common-wealth of *England* take upon the news thereof?

A. *Oliver Cromwel* was unanimously chosen lord-lieutenant of *Ireland*. He had sent succours to the above-mention'd colonel *Jones*, and afterwards cross'd into *Ireland* at the head of 12000 men; beat the royalists in several rencounters, and after having taken *Drogheda*, and *Kilkenny*, made himself master of the strongest holds in that island.

Q. Was he long in obtaining these several conquests?

A. He went into *Ireland* in *August*, 1649, and was oblig'd to return into *England* in *June*, 1650, upon advice sent him by the Parliament, that the *Scots* had taken up arms in favour of *Charles II.* whom they had recall'd, in order to set him upon the throne, and who was arriv'd there the 16th of *June*.

Q. Was *Oliver* as successful in *Scotland* as he had been in *Ireland*?

A. *Fairfax* having resign'd to him the chief command of the forces, he march'd against the royalists; defeated them at *Dunbar*, the 3^d of *September*, 1650, and possess'd himself of *Leith* and *Edinburgh*.

Q. Was the King's party able to make opposition after this?

A. The coronation of this Prince, was solemniz'd at *Scoon*, the 1st of *January*, 1651; and afterwards he put himself at the head of an army of 15000 foot, and 3000 horse. He went and posted himself very advantageously, when *Cromwel* march'd directly towards the King; but not being able to draw him out of his intrenchments, he retir'd. King *Charles*, instead of following

lowing him, entred *England*, and advanc'd as far as *Worcester*, where he was honourably receiv'd.

Q. Did the King always meet with the same success?

A. *Oliver* follow'd the King with hasty marches, and found him encamp'd within a mile of *Worcester*, when both armies came to an engagement, the 3^d of *September*, 1651. After a combat which lasted several hours, the King's troops were at last drove back, and oblig'd to retire into the city. The enemy beginning to enter it, all the cavalry fled, abandoning the infantry, which were all kill'd or taken. The King was oblig'd to retire thro' *St. Martin's* gate, and very narrowly escap'd being taken prisoner.

Q. What became afterwards of King *Charles*?

A. He made a resolution to withdraw into *France*, and for that purpose, confided in a faithful guide, who made him cloathe himself in a peasant's dress, and carry'd him thro' by-ways. In this sad condition he spent a whole day on a tufted oak he met with in *Boscobel*, in *Staffordshire*, not far from the road, whence he saw pass under him, persons who were speaking of him, some of whom wish'd he might fall into their hands. He never travell'd but in the night, his guide taking care in the day-time to conceal him in cottages, where he was not known, and in which he fed upon little else but milk.

Q. Did he find an opportunity to escape?

A. After having, during two months, undergone great fatigues, traversed a great part of the kingdom, from *Worcester* to the coast of *Sussex*, and avoided a numberless multitude of dangers, he arriv'd happily in *Normandy*, the 22^d of *October*.

Q. Was *England*, in the mean time, engag'd in no foreign war?

A. Yes; with the *United-Provinces*. And great naval engagements were fought between the fleets of the common-wealths of *England* and *Holland*, in 1652.

Q. Did *Cromwel* make an advantage of the ruin of King *Charles's* party?

A. Having quell'd the tumults that broke out in *England* and *Scotland*, which he did in a very short time, he usurp'd the sovereign authority; when keeping the army on foot, he put down the parliament, on the 20th of *April*; and chose 144 persons (known by the name of *Barebone's* parliament) to take care of the administration; but they soon after resigning that power, he caus'd himself to be proclaim'd protector of the kingdoms of *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*, the 16th of *December*, 1653.

OLIVER CROMWELL, *Protector.*

From 1653 to 1658.

2. **H**OW did *Oliver* conduct himself during his administration?

A. He assumed a greater authority than ever any *English* monarch had done, and as he had a strong army, which he kept still on foot, and a considerable naval force, both which were at his disposal; he govern'd the Parliament (who confirm'd him in the protectorship *anno* 1657) with a despotick sway, and kept the most rebellious spirits in subjection. A conspiracy was form'd against his person, by *Gerard* and *Vowel*; but this, instead of succeeding, only gave him an opportunity of governing in the most arbitrary manner.

2. What actions did he perform in the beginning of his protectorship?

A. He concluded a peace with the *United Provinces*, and the treaty was sign'd the 5th of *April*, 1654. The *Dutch* could not obtain it, before they had engag'd themselves to pay 300,000 *l.* for the damages they had done the *English* for upwards of thirty years past. Their ships paid the *English* common-wealth the same honours as they had paid the King. They abandon'd *Charles II.* and bound themselves not to receive any persons who were banish'd *England*.

2. Did

Q. Did not the *French* sue for his friendship?

A. Yes; notwithstanding that in 1652, the *English* fleet had not scrupled to attack that of *France*, which was going to the succour of *Dunkirk*, then besieged by the *Spaniards*, and which they took the same year. Notwithstanding this affront, the *French* sought his friendship; and peace was proclaim'd at *London* the 23^d of *October*, 1655.

Q. How did he agree with *Spain*?

A. The King of *Spain* had shewn the utmost partiality to the Parliament. Nevertheless, *Cromwell* was no sooner Protector, but he sent admiral *Pen*, the 24th of *December*, 1654, to make a descent on the island of *Hispaniola*, in order to sieze upon *St. Domingo*, which *Venables* however render'd unsuccessful. From thence they sail'd to *Jamaica*, and possess'd themselves of it with little difficulty, on the 16th of *May*, 1655. Some time after, *Blake* and *Montague* took; near *Cales*, two *Spanish* ships richly laden, and sunk some others. *Blake* burnt six *Spanish* galleons in the island of *Teneriff*. That admiral dying on board his ship, in his return to *England*, *Cromwell* buried him with great pomp, and would have his remains deposited in *Henry the VIIth's* chapel, in *Westminster Abbey*.

Q. Did *Cromwell* perform any other important action?

A. He made a league with *France* against *Spain*, in 1656, when the confederate army having taken *Dunkirk* and *Mardyke*, they were put into *Cromwell's* hands.

Q. Did he give any other marks of his authority?

A. *Don Pantaleon Sa*, knight of *Malta*, and the ambassador of *Portugal's* brother, having committed a murder, he caus'd him to be beheaded. *Oliver* had forc'd the ambassador to deliver him up. This action made a great noise in the world, and heavy complaints were made upon that account at *Lisbon*; but as the *Portuguese* were not at that time in a condition to revenge themselves, a peace was concluded in 1656.

Q. What have you to say farther of the usurper?

A. After having establish'd his authority upon the ruins of the Parliament, the members of which were

only so many slaves to his passions, and made the protectorate hereditary in his family: after having refus'd the crown which the same Parliament offer'd him, he dy'd of a tertian ague the 3^d of September, 1658.

Q. Describe the qualities of Oliver.

A. It is evident from what we have already related of him, that he was an illustrious warrior, a great politician, a man of the most consummate prudence; and that he had the art of making himself both fear'd and respected. He render'd himself equally the dread of *France*, *Spain*, and of the *United Provinces* of the *Low Countries*. These three powers sought so eagerly for his alliance and friendship, that we may affirm the several steps they took to obtain 'em, were next to groveling. Nay, so much was he fear'd in *France*, that it is said, Cardinal *Mazarin* would change countenance, at the hearing of his name. *Charles Gustavus* King of *Sweden*, thought it an honour to be his ally and particular friend. The royalists charge *Cromwell* with having an unbounded ambition, which being dreadfully cruel, and so arch an hypocrite as exceeds all imagination.

Q. How many sons did he leave behind him?

A. Two; the eldest whereof, nam'd *Richard*, was incapable of supporting the exalted station to which his father had rais'd him. The second nam'd *Henry*, was a man fit both for the cabinet and the field; the darling of the soldiery and the people. *Cromwell* had made him governor of *Ireland*, after having recall'd *Fleetwood*, whom he made lieutenant general in the room of *Lambert*, whom he depriv'd of all his employments, suspecting him to be one of the chief contrivers of a plot which was form'd against him. *Henry* was in *Ireland* at the time of his father's death. In the latter days of *Cromwell's* illness, he had appointed his son *Richard* his successor.

Q. How many daughters had *Cromwell*?

A. Four, viz. *Bridget*, marry'd first to *Henry Ireton*, and afterwards to lieutenant-general *Fleetwood*; *Elizabeth* his best beloved, marry'd to Mr. *Claypole*; *Mary*, to the lord viscount *Falconbridge*; and *Frances*, the fourth and youngest, to Mr. *Rich* first, and afterwards to Sir *John Ruffel*.

Q. Of what family was *Oliver* descended?

A. From the *Cromwells*, or *Williams*, a *Welsh* family, one of whom marry'd a sister of the lord *Cromwell*, King *Henry VIIIth*'s vicar-general in spirituals, whose son, *Richard Williams*, taking the name of *Cromwell*, transmitted it to his posterity. *Oliver* was born at *Huntington*, April 25th, 1599. His mother was neice to Sir *Robert Stuart*, of the isle of *Ely*; and his wife *Elizabeth*, was the daughter of Sir *James Bourchier*. He studied at *Sidney* college in *Cambridge*. There was little remarkable in his education, and 'tis not known how he conducted himself, till he was about thirty-five years old. His first post in the army was that of captain of a troop of horse, whence he rose to be general of all the forces of the Parliament, either rais'd or to be rais'd. *Oliver's* funeral was perform'd with extraordinary magnificence. After all the ceremonies which are observ'd in the interment of crown'd-heads, his corps was deposited in *Henry the VIIth*'s chapel, among those of the *English* monarchs, But some think that it was either sunk in the *Thames*, or buried in *Naseby-field*.

RICHARD CROMWELL, *Second* *Protector*.

Q. WHAT were the most remarkable transactions under the administration of *Richard*?

A. *Richard* was proclaim'd September 4th, without opposition; but a little after the chief officers of the army, resolv'd to get the sovereign authority into their own hands; and being very well belov'd by the rest of the officers and soldiers, they presented a petition, by which they desir'd to have the power of electing their own general. This *Richard* absolutely refus'd, and summon'd a Parliament, which met the 27th of *January*, 165^a.

Q. What was done in it?

A. Nothing at all; and *Richard* having therein discover'd some marks of weakness, dissolv'd it by order of

the officers of the army, who absolutely requir'd him to do so; they being highly incens'd at the prohibition which the Parliament had made, *viz.* that there should be no council of war during its sitting. After this Parliament was dissolv'd, *Richard* was look'd upon as a mere cypher, tho' he still preserv'd the title of Protector. The COUNCIL OF OFFICERS seiz'd upon the government, and after a short ANARCHY, elected *Charles Fleetwood* for their general; brought in again *Lambert*, a man of unbounded ambition; and restor'd the LONG PARLIAMENT dissolv'd by *Cromwell* in 1653.

Q. Did this Parliament enjoy more authority than the former?

A. They resolv'd to abolish the protectorate, and to depose *Richard*, who did not offer to make the least resistance, but resign'd his power upon their first demanding it, upon condition that they should pay his debts, and assign him an income sufficient to live in an honourable manner. *Henry* his brother submitted quietly to the orders of the Parliament; tho' tis very probable he might, had he pleas'd, have given the new governors a great deal of trouble, for he was universally belov'd. All historians in general, give him a very good character.

Q. In what state was *England* at that time?

A. It was divided into three parties; that of the Parliament or common-wealth; that of *Lambert* or of the army; and that of the royalists, who forbore to unite till such time as general *Monk* had put himself at the head of those, who only waited for an opportunity of declaring for their sovereign.

Q. Did the Parliament preserve their authority?

A. They maintain'd themselves for some time, till *Fleetwood* and *Lambert* oblig'd them to quit their seats; when a COMMITTEE OF SAFETY, to whom they remitted the administration of affairs, was constituted, on the 26th of *October*, to carry on a kind of government.

Q. What was the success of it?

A. This committee, which consisted of 23 persons, was very much oppos'd; the former Parliament which had

had been dissolv'd in a forcible manner, seeing the whole authority in the hands of the officers, endeavour'd to draw over *Monk*, governor of *Scotland*, to side with them.

Q. What was the result of all these cabals?

A. *Monk*, whose design was to restore the King, took advantage of this opportunity, and declar'd for the Parliament. He afterwards seiz'd on some of the frontier towns, whilst his army was getting together. The governor of *Portsmouth* declar'd for the Parliament; the army follow'd their example, and seiz'd *Lambert*, who was sent prisoner to the tower; so that the RUMF PARLIAMENT met again the 26th of *December*, 1659.

Q. Did not this revolution divert general *Monk* from his design?

A. No; he made the assisting of the Parliament a pretence to reduce his army to obedience, and march'd to *London*, whose inhabitants he won. He afterwards restor'd the Parliament seclud'd in 1648, which in a few days dissolv'd itself, after having summon'd, for *April* the 25th following, a free Parliament to restore the King.

Q. Was he not travers'd in his design?

A. *Lambert*, who had escap'd out of the tower, where he was prisoner, put himself at the head of a few troops; but he was taken prisoner by colonel *Ingoldfby*, so that *Monk* was not disappointed in his aim.

Q. In what manner did he execute it?

A. When all things were ready, he sent the King word, and besought him to depute some person to the Parliament, in order to determine their resolutions.

Q. What measures did the King take?

A. He sent Sir *John Granvill* to *London*, with a letter directed to the Parliament, and another for general *Monk*, which were receiv'd with joy; and accordingly it was resolv'd that they should send some of their members to invite him to return, when he was proclaim'd King of *Great-Britain*, the 8th of *May*, 1660.

Q. Where was he at that time?

A. At *Breda* in *Holland*, where the members went to wait upon him; when embarking at the *Hague*, on *Wednesday*

uesday the 23^d of May, they landed at *Dover* on Friday, with the duke of York, the duke of Gloucester, and a great number of noblemen and gentlemen. At *Dover* he took coach immediately: but about two miles from this place the King took horse, his brothers riding on his right-hand, and general *Monk* on the left, when they came to *Canterbury*, where the very next day, he made general *Monk* knight of the garter. On Monday following his Majesty came to *Rocheſter*, from thence to *Black-heath*, where the army was drawn up in *St. George's Fields*: the Lord-Mayor deliver'd the sword to his Majesty, from whence he was conducted thro' *London* (May the 29th, his birth-day) to his royal palace at *Whitehall*, with the utmost joy and magnificence; when immediately he paid his devotion and thanks to *Almighty God*.

CHARLES II. XLVIth King of England.

And Third of Great-Britain.

From 1660 to 1685.

Popes.		Emperor.	
ALEXANDER VII.	1655	LEOPOLD	1658
CLEMENT IX.	1667		
CLEMENT X.	1670	King of France.	
INNOCENT XI.	1676	LEWIS XIV.	1643

Q. WHEN was this Prince crown'd?

A. The 23^d of April, 1661, being *St. George's* day.

Q. What was the character of this Prince?

A. He was liberal even to prodigality, extremely affable, and so easy in conversation, that he seem'd desirous of doing good to all mankind. To this was added, a lively genius, a wonderful conception and an exquisite judgment. He understood the interest of his kingdom better than any of his ministers. During his exile,

exile, he had apply'd himself to the study of Physicks and of the mathematicks, and particularly to the building of ships, in which he had made a great progress. These qualities would easily have enabled him to govern his dominions in such a manner as might be glorious to himself and advantageous to his subjects, and have made him the arbiter of *Europe*; but he was too great a lover of ease and quiet. He is justly blam'd for having had too great a complaisance for the fair sex.

Q. What did he do upon his first ascending the throne?

A. The first thing he did, was the making an act of indemnity, out of which 49 of the late King's judges were excepted and sentenc'd to die. Ten of these only were executed, and the rest were reserv'd for other punishments, as imprisonment, banishment, and the confiscation of their estates;

Q. What did he do farther?

A. He repeal'd all the laws which had been enacted in favour of a popular government; rewarded those who had done him any considerable service; restor'd the episcopal clergy to their benefices, of which *Oliver* had depriv'd them, for the sake of the *Presbyterians*, on whom that usurper bestow'd them; and in a word, settled things upon the same foot on which they had stood before the year 1640.

Q. Had he any wars during his reign?

A. He wag'd war in 1664, against *Holland*. With regard to the reasons of it, he never alledg'd any but general ones, except only the taking of two ships in the *East-Indies*, and for the recovery of which, the States had agreed that the *English* should take out a suit at law.

Q. Did any thing remarkable happen during this war?

A. Several battles were fought, the first of which was a very bloody one; the duke of *York*, who commanded the *English* fleet, gave the most signal tokens of an intrepid courage, and an undaunted resolution upon this occasion, and triumph'd over the *Dutch*; this happen'd the 3^d of *June*, 1665.

Q. Did

Q. Did the *Dutch* sustain great loss in this engagement?

A. *Opdam* their admiral lost his life in it, and his ship: 19 were either taken, burnt or sunk, with about 6000 men; and some affirm that the whole fleet would have been destroy'd, had not *Brounker* prevented their crouding all the sail they could in order to pursue the enemy, while the duke was asleep; notwithstanding he had given orders for that purpose, a little before he lay down.

Q. Had the *English* as good success in the other engagements?

A. Both nations fought several battles with great vigour, tho' none of them were decisive, till that which was fought off of *Sandwich*, wherein *Ruyter* behav'd with the utmost bravery. The *Dutch*, after that, in *June* 1667, sail'd up the *Medway*, and burnt several of our ships at *Chatham*. However, the King as well as the *Dutch* being equally desirous of peace, it was concluded a little after.

Q. Did not a dreadful plague happen in *London* in 1665?

A. Yes; and in one year it swept away 67,576 persons; and the year following a raging fire broke out, which consum'd 13200 houses, besides 89 churches, &c. People talk'd variously with regard to the causes of this fire.

Q. Where was the peace concluded between *England* and *Holland*?

A. At *Breda*, and was proclaim'd in *London*, and the *Hague*, the 24th of *August*, 1667; after which the famous treaty call'd the *Triple Alliance*, was stipulated between the *English*, the *Swedes*, and the *Dutch*.

Q. What was the occasion of this alliance?

A. As *Lewis XIV.* had seiz'd several places in the *Spanish Netherlands*, and plainly shew'd that he aspir'd after universal monarchy, 'twas the interest of all the other powers of *Europe* to set bounds to his ambition. 'Twas with this view that the *Dutch* enter'd into a league with the Kings of *England* and *Sweden*. This treaty was concluded at the *Hague* in 1668.

Q. Did

Q. Did King *Charles* reap any benefit by this peace?

A. It gave him an opportunity especially of quieting the minds of the people, and to make them acquiesce with the declaration he publish'd for liberty of conscience on *March 15, 1672.* design'd principally in favour of the *Roman Catholicks*; but he was oblig'd to annul it about the beginning of the year 1673.

Q. Was the alliance with *Holland* lasting?

A. 'Till *March 28, 1672,* when *Charles* declar'd war against 'em upon very slight pretences. *Lewis XIV.* proclaim'd war against them the very same day, and the bishop of *Munster* a month after. The Elector of *Colen* join'd with *France*, so that *Holland* was invaded by four powers.

Q. What was the success of this war?

A. The *English* fleet commanded by the duke of *York*, having join'd that of *France*, whereof count *d'Estrees* was admiral, engag'd *Ruyter*, at *Solbay*. The loss was pretty equal on both sides, and both ascrib'd to themselves the victory. The year after, three other naval engagements were fought, but neither side came off victorious.

Q. Was the war carry'd on by the *Dutch* with the same success on land?

A. The King of *France*, assisted by the Elector of *Colen*, march'd at the head of his troops, and took several of the principal cities in *Holland*, and advanc'd as far as *Utrecht*; whilst the bishop of *Munster* at the same time laid waste the province of *Over Iffel*, and attack'd those of *Friesland* and *Groningen*, so that the *Dutch* had only the two provinces of *Holland* and *Zeland* left. The *Dutch* having check'd the conquests of *Lewis*, and *Spain* having declar'd war against him, he was forced to restore what he had conquer'd in the united provinces, *Maefricht* and *Grave* excepted. Peace was thereupon proclaim'd the 28th of *February, 1674.*

Q. Were the *English* satisfy'd with this peace?

A. Notwithstanding that *Lewis XIV.* had accepted of King *Charles* as mediator of a general peace, the *English* did all that lay in their power to oblige King *Charles* to declare war with *France*; and presented several addresses

dresses to him upon that head, in the Parliament held in 1677.

Q. With what temper did King Charles receive them?

A. At first he promis'd, but in general terms, to declare war with France. He afterwards made grievous complaints against the house of commons, for having requir'd him to conclude an offensive and defensive league with the Dutch. Nevertheless, the Prince of Orange arriving at London about the end of the campaign of the same year, and having on the 4th of November, espous'd the eldest daughter of the duke of York, he manag'd matters so well with the King, that he prevail'd with him to consent to join in a defensive league against France, which was sign'd at the Hague the 16th of January, 1673.

Q. What was the result of this confederacy?

A. It came to nothing, altho' Charles rais'd an army of 30000 men, as if he had intended to carry on the war. The Dutch seeing that Charles did not intend to assist 'em, concluded with Lewis the treaty of Nimeguen the last day of June, 1678.

Q. In what did King Charles employ himself during the peace?

A. In opposing the commons, who pass'd several acts against the Roman Catholics, and to exclude the duke of York from the succession.

Q. In favour of whom were all these commotions made?

A. Of James duke of Monmouth, a natural son of the King, whom his partisans declar'd to be legitimate.

Q. Who were those that presum'd to make so bold a motion?

A. The house of commons; and after several debates, they pass'd by a great majority of voices, a bill to exclude the duke of York; but the bill being sent up to the lords for their concurrence, it was thrown out.

Q. What did King Charles do upon this occasion?

A. He declar'd, that he never was married to Mrs. Barlow, the Duke of Monmouth's mother; after which he either prorogu'd or dissolv'd several Parliaments, that had

had presum'd to present several addresses to him, in order to exclude the duke of York.

Q. What was the reason of their hating the duke of York in this manner?

A. He openly profess'd the *Romish* religion; and their aversion to it, being heightened by the discovery of a plot in 1678. carry'd on by the *Roman* Catholicks, in which the duke was concern'd, according to the deposition of *Bedloe*, on his death bed, to the lord chief-justice *North*, they endeavour'd to exclude him the succession.

Q. Was not a protestant plot said to be carried on?

A. Yes; that is, against the King and the duke of York. By this conspiracy, call'd the *Rye-house* plot, (from a house of that name in *Hertfordshire*) 'tis pretended that the conspirators had projected to kill the King and the duke of York in their return from *New-market*. 'Tis related; that they miss'd putting it in execution, by a fire breaking out at *New-market*, in 1683, which oblig'd the King to return back sooner than he intended. Be this as it will, several were accus'd of having engag'd in it, and suffer'd death, and among the rest, the lord *Russel*. The earl of *Essex* was found with his throat cut in the tower. The duke of *Monmouth*, who also had been impeach'd, was in disgrace some time, but he afterwards obtain'd his pardon. The earl of *Shaftsbury* fled to *Holland*, and there ended his days.

Q. What plot was that which was carry'd on by the *Papists*?

A. *Titus Oates*, who not knowing how to get a livelihood, had turn'd *Roman* Catholick, and had been admitted among the *Jesuits*, accus'd them of having conspir'd against the King's life, the protestant religion and the government of the kingdom; he farther affirm'd that the Pope, the King of *France*, the duke of York, and several of the nobility were accomplices in it; and that *Thomas White*, or *White-bread*, provincial of the *Jesuits* in *England*, was at the head of it.

Q. What follow'd these impeachments?

A. The King was very negligent in this affair, and on his refusal to pursue it, the Parliament heard *Oates* and *Bedloe*, and imprison'd several *Roman* Catholicks, who

were condemn'd and executed, among whom were several Jesuits, and *Coleman*, secretary to the duke of York.

Q. Were these all the commotions that happen'd in King *Charles's* reign?

A. Most of his Parliaments were tumultuous; the *Scotch* Presbyterians took up arms; massacred Dr. *Sharp* archbishop of *St. Andrew's*, and committed great disorders, but they were entirely defeated by the duke of *Monmouth*. And great disturbances happen'd in *London* about the election of sheriffs; but King *Charles* reign'd during the rest of his life without a Parliament; oblig'd the citizens of *London* to submit to his Will, and depriv'd it of its privileges.

Q. When did King *Charles* die?

A. The 6th of *February*, 1684, aged 54 years, after having reign'd near 25 since his restoration. And notwithstanding that he openly profess'd the protestant religion, he nevertheless died, according to several authors, a *Roman Catholick*.

Q. Was he ever marry'd?

A. Yes; on *May* 21, 1662, to *Catharine*, daughter of *Don Juan IV.* King of *Portugal*; who had for her portion two millions of crusades, or about 300000*l.* sterling, the city of *Tangier*, and the Island of *Bombay* in the *East-Indies*. She was born at *Villa Viciosa*, the 14th of *November* 1638.

Q. Did *Charles* leave any children?

A. Yes; he left several of both sexes, but they were all illegitimate.

Q. Who were they?

A. By Mrs. *Lucy Walters*, alias *Barlow*, he had *James Scot*, afterwards created duke of *Monmouth*; by *Elizabeth* viscountess *Shannon*, *Charlotte-Jemia*, *Henrietta-Maria*; by Mrs. *Catharine Pegge*, *Charles Fitz-Charles*, commonly call'd *Don Carlos*, created earl of *Plymouth*; by *Barbara* dutchess of *Cleveland*, *Charles Fitz-Roy*, created duke of *Southampton*, *Henry Fitz-Roy*, created duke of *Grafton*, *George Fitz-Roy* duke of *Northumberland*, *Anne Fitz-Roy*, *Charlotte*, marry'd to the earl of *Litchfield*, and *Barbara*; by Mrs. *Hellen Gwyn*, *Charles Beauclerc*, duke of *St. Albans*, and another son named *James*, who died young; by
Louisa

Louisa de Querouaille, a lady of *Bretagne*, created dutchess of *Portsmouth*, *Charles Lenox* duke of *Richmond*; by Mrs. *Mary Davis*, *Mary Tudor*, marry'd to *Francis*, eldest son of the earl of *Derwentwater*.

Q. Was there not some suspicion that the King had been poison'd?

A. Yes; for when his body was open'd; there was not sufficient time allow'd for taking an exact observation of his stomach and bowels; in the next place, a few hours after his death, his body emitted so offensive a smell, that no one could hardly bear the room; a circumstance very extraordinary in one of so healthy and vigorous a constitution, and which was no ways the consequence of an apoplexy. However, few Princes die suddenly, but immediately the world is apt to ascribe it to foul play, especially if the time and manner of it are attended with unusual circumstances.

Q. What other remarkable particulars happened in this reign?

A. The bodies of *Cromwell*, *Bradshaw*, &c. were taken out of their graves, and hung at *Tyburn*. In 1660, the Royal Society was founded. One *Blood* had like to have stole the crown, the sceptre and the globe, which are kept in the tower. In 1683, was a violent frost in *England*; and the year before, King *Charles* receiv'd two ambassadors extraordinary, one from the King of *Fex* and *Morocco*, and the other from the King of *Bantam*.

(196)

JAMES II. XLVIIth King of England.

And Fourth of Great-Britain.

From 1685 to 1688.

Pope.		Emperor.	
INNOCENT XI.	1676	LEOPOLD King of France.	1658
		LEWIS XIV.	1643

Q. WHO succeeded King *Charles II.*

A. The duke of York his brother, called King *James* the II^d of England, and VIIth of Scotland; he was born at *St. James's*, October the 14th, 1633, proclaim'd King the 6th of February, 1685, and crown'd the 23^d of April, 1685. Few Princes have ascended the throne with greater acclamations of the people, or more to their satisfaction than he did.

A. Did not he enjoy some considerable post under the King his brother?

A. Yes; that of lord high admiral of England, in which quality he had commanded the English fleet in the Dutch wars.

Q. What did he in the beginning of his reign?

A. He summoned two Parliaments, the one to meet in England, the other in Scotland, who granted him all his demands; that of Scotland annex'd the duty of the excise to the crown, for ever; and gave a yearly subsidy of two hundred and sixty thousand pounds sterling. The English Parliament granted him a revenue of upwards of two millions of pounds sterling. *Titus Oates* and *Thomas Dangerfield* were cruelly whipt, on account of their depositions and discoveries about the Popish and Meal-Tub plots, and the last was kill'd.

Q. Did

Q. Did not a faction endeavour to ruffle these happy beginnings?

A. *James* duke of *Monmouth*, natural son of the late King, returning from the *Low-Countries*, where he had been banish'd, landed at, and was receiv'd in, the little town of *Lyme* in *Dorsetshire*, the 11th of *June*, 1685, at the head of 80 men only.

Q. What declaration did he publish in justification of his conduct?

A. That the sole motive of his taking up arms, was to maintain the Protestant religion, which King *James* (to whom he only gave the title of duke of *York*) intended to extirpate. He declar'd that his mother had been lawfully married to King *Charles II.*

Q. Did he succeed in his rash enterprise?

A. He came to *Axminster*, and from thence to *Taunton*, where he had himself proclaim'd King, by the title of *James II.* He again march'd out, went near to *Bridgewater*, where the King's forces, commanded by the earl of *Feverham*, coming up with him, he was defeated; two days after the battle, the duke was found in a ditch, cover'd with fern, in order to conceal himself, having some peascods in his pocket. He very probably had liv'd upon nothing else for two days. Being taken prisoner he was carry'd to the tower.

Q. What befel him afterwards?

A. As the King was of opinion, that it would be necessary for him to sacrifice the duke to his security, he himself gave orders for his being beheaded; for I don't find that the King had him judg'd according to the common forms of law, accordingly he was executed the 15th of *July*, 1685.

Q. Was he the only person who had taken up arms against the King?

A. The earl of *Argyle* went from *Holland*, and landed on the 20th of *May*, in *Scotland*, which he flatter'd himself would rise in his favour; but in a little time he was universally abandon'd, and was afterwards taken and condemned to lose his head, which was executed at *Edinburgh* on the 30th of *June* of the same year.

Q. Did the executions end with the duke?

A. No; those which follow'd were as cruel and barbarous as had ever happen'd in any age, considering the inabilities of the poor wretches to do mischief. The first that fell under the bloody lord chief justice *Jefferies*, (who was sent into the west with a special commission of *Oyer and Terminer*,) was Mrs. *Alicia Lisle*, upwards of eighty years of age, widow of the lord *Lisle*, one of the judges of *Charles I.* who being try'd for concealing Mr. *Hicks* a presbyterian minister of the duke of *Monmouth's* party, and *Richard Nelthrop*; the latter being a foreigner, and the former in no proclamation, the jury brought her in three times *not guilty*; but at last *Jefferies's* threats so far prevail'd, that she was found guilty, and beheaded. But not to enter into particulars, *Jefferies* caused 29 to be executed at *Dorchester*, 80 at *Exeter*; and several in other places; he condemned upwards of 500 persons, whereof 239 (according to those who calculate the fewest) were executed, and their quarters set up in the principal places and roads of the country, to the great annoyance of passengers. In *London* one *Elizabeth Gaunt* was publickly burnt for having assisted one of *Monmouth's* adherents to make his escape: And for fear we should tire the reader, we omit a great number of barbarous actions which he committed.

Q. Was he the only bloody instrument in these barbarities?

A. Colonel *Kirk* likewise play'd the butcher among these miserable creatures; for when after the defeat he came to *Taunton*, he caus'd 90 men to be hang'd there, with pipes playing, drums beating, and trumpets sounding, making sport at their executions. But another action *Kirk* perpetrated is almost incredible. A young woman being come to throw herself at his feet, to beg her brother's life, he persuaded her to prostitute herself to him, promising on this condition, that he would pardon her brother. But after he had satiated his brutal lust, he had the cruelty to carry the young woman to the window, whence she saw her brother hanging up on the sign-post of the house, where he quarter'd. This sad spectacle had so strong an effect on this unhappy young woman, that she ran distracted.

Q. But

Q. But what execution made the most noise?

A. That of alderman *Cornish*, sheriff of *London*, a gentleman very well belov'd, who in *October* was committed to *Newgate*, and a week after was try'd upon an indictment of high-treason, for having conspir'd against the life of King *Charles II.* with the lord *Russel*, &c. in the *Rye-house* plot; and notwithstanding that there appear'd manifest contradictions, in what the evidences depos'd against him, he was nevertheless condemn'd and executed as a traitor the 23^d of *October*, 1685. Mr. *Bateman*, a very eminent surgeon, was also executed for treason.

Q. What steps did King *James* take, in order to set up the *Roman* Catholick religion?

A. He undertook, at one and the same time, two things which were equally difficult. The first was, the setting of himself above the laws; and the second to change the establish'd religion. For this purpose he dispensed several of his officers and counsellors from the *Test-Act*. After this, a sett of judges corrupted by the King, gave it as their opinion, that his Majesty could dispense with the penal laws in cases of necessity, and was himself the only judge of that necessity. To that resolution King *James* chiefly ow'd his misfortunes.

Q. What other measures did he take to forward and establish Popery?

A. He sent a circular letter to the bishops, with an order, prohibiting the inferior clergy from preaching upon controverted points of divinity; but some of them did not think fit to comply with that order. Dr. *Sharp*, in particular, rector of *St. Giles's*, and afterwards archbishop of *York*, expatiated on some points of controversy; an account whereof being brought to the King, he was very urgent with the bishop of *London* to suspend Doctor *Sharp*.

Q. Did the bishop obey him?

A. He refus'd to obey the orders sent him by the King, who cited him to appear before the new ecclesiastical commission, composed of prelates and laymen: the

the lord chancellor *Jefferies* was one of the judges of this court.

Q. What sentence did it pronounce?

A. The bishop was suspended from the function and execution of his episcopal office, and from all ecclesiastical jurisdiction, during his majesty's pleasure. Dr. *Sharp* was also suspended. One Mr. *Johnson* a clergyman, having address'd a writing to the army, was pillory'd, whipt cruelly, and sentenc'd to pay 500 marks, King *James* also violated the statutes of the two universities of *Oxford* and *Cambridge*.

Q. Was this all the King did?

A. He had for the better bringing in of *Popery*, always entertain'd a resolution of granting liberty of conscience, and publish'd a declaration for that purpose in 1687, which he first sent into *Scotland*, where it was unanimously received by the council there; and accordingly it was publish'd in all parts of that kingdom.

Q. What Reception did it meet with in *England*?

A. The privy council approv'd of this declaration which was almost the same with that publish'd in *Scotland*, except that the King spoke therein in much more moderate Terms, of his absolute power.

Q. In what manner was this declaration receiv'd by the People?

A. As it seem'd to be made in favour of *Dissenters* of all denominations, the several sectaries in *England* receiv'd it with the highest testimonies of joy, and thanked his Majesty by their addresses; in a word, all were highly satisfied with it, except the members of the church of *England*.

Q. Cou'd the King prevail with the Parliament to consent to the repeal of the penal laws and test?

A. Altho' he employ'd all his endeavours to bring them over, he nevertheless found it impossible for him to effect it, which made him dissolve it; notwithstanding he had reason to be satisfy'd with it upon all other accounts.

Q. What other marks of absolute power did King *James* give?

A. He

A. He sent *Roger Palmer* earl of *Castlemain* to *Rome*, in order to reconcile his three kingdoms to the Holy See, but that ambassador met with a very ill reception from the Pope. King *James* also caus'd *Ferdinand Dada* to come into *England*, in quality of the Pope's Nuncio.

Q. What effect had the second declaration for liberty of conscience?

A. *Sancroft*, archbishop of *Canterbury*, and the bishops *St. Asaph*, *Ely*, *Chichester*, *Bath* and *Wells*, *Peterborough*, and *Bristol*, having refus'd to cause this declaration to be read in the churches of their diocesses, were sent to the tower. Being afterwards judg'd before the court of *King's-bench*, they were acquitted.

Q. What happened during this interval?

A. The 10th of *June* 1688, the Queen was deliver'd of a Prince, on which occasion the *Romanists* triumph'd, whilst the Protestants were astonish'd and terrified; after the birth of this Prince, the *English* resolv'd to oppose the King's designs, with vigour.

Q. How did they act?

A. The episcopalians united with the dissenters, and resolv'd to set the Prince of *Orange* on the throne. With this view, several noblemen went very early to the *Hague*, upon various pretences, in order to confer there with the Prince of *Orange*, who being entirely resolv'd to set himself at the head of this party, secur'd to himself the assistance of the Princes his neighbours, in case *France* should attack *Holland* or the *Netherlands* in his absence. He afterwards equipp'd a fleet with all possible secrecy.

Q. Could he keep this secret from taking vent?

A. Mr. *Skelton* King *James's* envoy at the *Hague*, gave some account of it to his sovereign; as likewise did Mr. *Verace* of *Geneva*, by the same canal; but no regard was paid to these letters; whether from an effect of too great a security, or from the earl of *Sunderland's* refusing to communicate these letters to the King.

Q. How did the King of *France* behave in this conjuncture?

A. 'Tis pretended that he offer'd King *James* a fleet and an army of 30000 men, but that the earl of *Sunderland*

land prevented his accepting of that offer. Be this as it will, King *James* refus'd this succour, from a supposition that he should have no occasion for it.

Q. What measures did King *James* take in order to defend himself against the Prince of *Orange*?

A. He appointed the earl of *Feverham* General of his army, and the earl of *Dartmouth* to command the fleet, which consisted of 60 ships, 28 whereof were of the line. After this, he abolish'd, tho' with regret, the ecclesiastical commission, restor'd to the city of *London* its ancient charter remov'd all the *Romish* magistrates, and put Protestants in their places, and took off the bishop of *London*'s suspension.

Q. Did this prevail with the Prince of *Orange* to lay aside his enterprize?

A. No; he set out from *Holland*, accompanied by marshal *Schomberg*, count de *Solmes* and de *Nassau*, Mess. *Overkirk* and *Bentinck*, and several other persons of quality, the 19th of *October* 1688, with a fleet which consisted of 50 men of war, 25 frigates, as many fireships, and about 400 victuallers and transports; and was now ready to set sail, having about 12 or 13 thousand forces on board.

Q. Was their voyage successful?

A. The whole fleet was sail'd out of port, and had begun to steer their course, when a storm arose, which oblig'd them to return back into the harbour; however, they put to sea again the first of *November*.

Q. Had not the King of *England* a fleet to oppose that of the Prince of *Orange*?

A. Yes; the earl of *Dartmouth*, the *English* admiral, had promis'd the King to intercept the enemy, but he did not show himself; and the Prince after staying between *Calais* and *Dover*, for such ships as were not come up, landed his forces at *Torbay*, on the 5th of *November*, without meeting with the least opposition, and immediately publish'd several declarations.

Q. What was the substance of these declarations?

A. The Prince of *Orange* therein declar'd, that he had been invited into *England* by a great number of the nobility

bility of that kingdom; and that the sole motive thereof was to prevent the setting up of a tyrannical power, and the ruin of the church of *England*, which would soon be follow'd by the abolition of the fundamental laws of the kingdom.

Q. Did not the *English* oppose the Prince of *Orange's* enterprize?

A. No, for the greatest part of them justly consider'd him as their deliverer. Persons of distinction came daily in to him. The lord *Cornbury*, son to the earl of *Clarendon*, was the first officer in the army who declar'd against the King; and won over part of his forces, at whose head he march'd towards *Exeter*, which the Prince had taken possession of a little after his landing.

Q. How did the King behave in this conjuncture?

A. He went to *Salisbury* where his army was quarter'd. The very day of his arrival, which was *November 19*, several of the principal officers declar'd in a respectful manner, to their General, that they did not think they could in conscience fight against the Prince of *Orange*. The King found by this declaration that he could not depend on the army.

Q. How did some lords in the King's army act?

A. Prince *George*, the dukes of *Ormond*, and *Grafton*, the lord *Churchill*, the King's favourite, and afterwards duke of *Marlborough*, went over to the Prince of *Orange*, with several other persons of Distinction; particularly the princess *Ann*, the King's own daughter.

Q. What measures did the king take?

A. Finding there was no trusting his own army, he left it, and return'd back to *London*, to secure that city.

Q. What course did he take in order to check the progress of the enemy?

A. He assembled in *London*, the few lords spiritual and temporal who were then in that city; sent commissioners to the Prince of *Orange*, to negotiate with him; declaring at the same time that he would call a free Parliament, which was appointed to meet the 15th of *January*. He afterwards propos'd, that the two armies, should keep at an equal distance from *London*.

Q. How

Q. How did the Prince receive this proposal?

A. Very well; after which he made some proposals to the King, which he was going to accept, when (as 'tis supposed) having advis'd with his *Romish* counsellors, they exhorted him to retire into *France*. They also rais'd so many fears in the Queen's mind, that she retir'd into *France* with the Prince of *Wales*. The King of *France* receiv'd her at *Versailles* with the highest marks of affection?

Q. Did the King continue any time at *London*?

A. He left it the night between the 10th and 11th of *December*, 1688, accompanied only with Sir *Edward Hales*, Mr. *Sheldon*, and Mr. *Abbadie*, a *Frenchman*, page of the back-stairs, in order to cross over into *France*, when they went on board; but having put in to ballast the ship that was to carry them, he was seiz'd at *Feversham*, by some people who at first us'd him very roughly; but the earl of *Winchelsea*, lord lieutenant of the county, being come, he perswaded the King to return to *London*.

Q. What did the lords who were in *London* do at this juncture?

A. They deputed four of their body to go to the King, to beseech him to return to *Whitehall*, assuring him that he should be receiv'd there with all the respect that was due to him; and they immediately order'd out his coaches to go and fetch him.

Q. Did they obey these orders punctually?

A. Yes; and brought back the King to *London*, wherein he made his entrance on the 16th of *December*, about four in the afternoon; and was receiv'd there with such acclamations, that one would have imagin'd he was returning from a great victory.

Q. What was the Prince of *Orange* doing all this time?

A. He sent some forces to *London*, who secur'd *Whitehall*; and then sent and desir'd his Majesty to leave *London* and retire to *Ham*, a house belonging to the duchess of *Lauderdale*.

Q. Whither did he go?

Q. As

A. As he had assur'd the Queen that he would follow her immediately, he desir'd to withdraw to *Rochester*, which was granted him; and the same day, being the 18th, the Prince of *Orange* came to *London*, when the people made bonfires for joy of his arrival, tho' they had done the same but two days before upon the King's coming into it.

Q. Did the King stay any time at *Rochester*?

A. No; he got privately out of his chamber the 23^d of *December*, and being accompanied with only the duke of *Berwick*, his natural son, and Mess. *Sheldon* and *Abbadie*, he rode to the sea-side, and embark'd on board a little frigate, which landed him happily at *Ambleteuse*, whence he went to *St. Germain*s.

I N T E R R E G N U M.

From December the 25th 1688, to February 13th following.

Q. WHAT measures did the *English* take after the King was thus withdrawn?

A. The peers being assembled, sent an address to the Prince of *Orange*, desiring him to take the administration upon himself, till such time as they had assembled the estates of the kingdom, under the name and title of the Convention, which was order'd to be held the 22^d of *January*.

Q. What was the result of this convention?

A. The house of commons declar'd the throne vacant by the King's abdication; but the house of lords were some time before they would agree to it, and were even oblig'd to have a conference with a committee of the commons; but at last those who had the real interest of their country at heart prevail'd, and the throne was accordingly declar'd vacant.

Q. Where these all the steps they took?

A. Several forms of government were propos'd, but the Prince of *Orange* giving them to understand that he
T would

would return back into *Holland*, in case they declar'd the Princess, his consort, Queen, without allowing him to share in the regal power; they resolved to offer him the crown.

Q. What was the final resolution of the Convention?

A. The two houses agreed, that the Prince and Princess of *Orange* should be King and Queen of *England* jointly, and that the administration of affairs should be in the hands of the Prince. This was resolved; and mention was made but once of the Prince of *Wales*, some lords having propos'd to make an enquiry into his birth, but this proposal was at last reject'd for several reasons. The Princess of *Orange* arriving the 12th of *February*, 1688⁵, seem'd very well satisfy'd with the resolutions which had been taken. The Prince and Princess, after having accepted of the crown, which was offer'd them by the two houses of convention, were proclaim'd King and Queen of *Great-Britain*, by the names of *William* and *Mary*, the 13th of *February*, to the inexpressible satisfaction of the people.

Q. Was King *James* ever married?

A. He was twice marry'd; first to the lady *Anne Hyde*, daughter to *Edward Hyde*, afterwards earl of *Clarendon*, and lord high chancellor of *England*, which marriage was not made publick till 1661.

Q. Who was his second wife?

A. *Maria Josepha* of *Este*, daughter of *Alphonso* of *Este*, duke of *Modena*, and of *Laurenza Martinozzi*.

Q. Had he any children by them?

A. By his first wife he had four sons, who died in their infancy; and four daughters, two of which only came to age of maturity, viz. *Mary*, born in 1662, and married in 1678 to *William Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*. And *Anne*, born in *February*, 1664, married the 28th of *July*, 1683, to Prince *George* of *Denmark*, son to *Frederick III.* King of *Denmark*, and *Sophia Amelia* of *Lunenburg*.

Q. How many children had he by his last wife?

A. A son, named *Charles*; and another son, or at least a suppos'd son, call'd the Prince of *Wales*, born the 10th of *June*, 1688, at ten in the morning.

Q Had

Q. Had he no daughters?

A. Yes, he had three; and after his exile in *France*, he had also a daughter born at *St. Germain's* the 18th of *June*, 1692, but she did not long survive her father. He moreover had four natural children; three by *Mrs. Arabella Churchill*, and one by *Catharine Sedley* countess of *Dorchester*.

Q. When, and in what place did King *James* die?

A. At *St. Germain's* the 6th of *September*, 1701, in the 68th year of his age.

Q. What were the qualities of this Prince?

A. Historians who have wrote with impartiality, give the following character of him; That he was a good father, a good husband, a good master, and would have been a good King, had it not been for the wicked ministers about him; that as his greatest enemies cannot deny, but that he show'd a great deal of bravery on several occasions, when he was duke of *York*; so his best friends are oblig'd to confess, that he had more piety than resolution, when he was King of *England*; in a word, that the religion he profess'd was the source of all his misfortunes; for that 'tis highly probable, his reign would have been happy, had he himself been a Protestant, or his subjects *Roman* Catholicks. He might have been as happy as his heart could have wish'd, had he but made the laws the measure of his government, and not have hearken'd too much to certain persons. He had met with but too many occasions, to know the genius and temper of the people he was to govern; and to know that it was utterly impracticable to overthrow the establish'd religion, or introduce a new one.

WILLIAM III. and MARY II.
XLVIIIth King and Queen of England.

And V. of Great-Britain.

From 1688 to 170 $\frac{1}{2}$.

Popes.		Emperor.	
INNOCENT XI.	1676	LEOPOLD	1659
ALEXANDER VIII.	1689	King of France.	
INNOCENT XII.	1691	LEWIS XIV.	1643

Q. WHEN were King *William* and Queen *Mary* crown'd?

A. The 11th of *April* following, in *Westminster-Abbey*, with the usual magnificence.

Q. Did *Ireland* submit?

A. The earl of *Tyrconnel* maintain'd the greatest part of it for King *James*; King *William's* party which prevail'd only in the *North*, seiz'd the towns of *Kilmore*, *Coleraine*, *Inniskilling*, and *Londonderry*. King *James* landed at *Kingsale March* the 12th, and arriv'd at *Dublin* on the 24th. The city of *Londonderry*, of which Mr. *Walker*, a clergyman, was chosen governor, being besieg'd by an army of King *James*, made a glorious defence. The city of *Iniskilling* also distinguish'd itself greatly.

Q. Did King *James's* arms make no further progress?

A. The duke of *Schomberg* landed on the 13th of *August*, 1689, at the head of a body of *English* forces, when King *James* advanc'd in order to fight him; but not having been able to bring him to an engagement during the whole summer season, he march to *Dublin*, to winter there.

Q. Had

Q. Had King *James* better success the following year?

A. No; King *William*, accompanied by Prince *George*, the duke of *Ormond*, and several other nobleman, went over into *Ireland*, and arriv'd there the 14th of *June*, 1690, and joining with the duke of *Schomberg*, he march'd towards *Dublin* with 36000 men and 60 pieces of cannon.

Q. Did King *James* suffer him to get the start of him?

A. This Prince with upwards of 25000 men, and 12 pieces of cannon, advanc'd forwards to meet King *William*, and resolv'd to fight him at the pass of the *Boyne*; when both armies engag'd the first of *July*, 1690.

Q. What was the success of it?

A. King *James* had given orders to fall upon the troops which had pass'd a ford, at *Slane-bridge*; during which the *Irish* disputed another pass at *Old-bridge*, with the brave duke of *Schomberg*, who there lost his life, after having acquir'd immortal glory; but the order not having been observ'd soon enough, the right wing was broke in spite of the great bravery of the duke of *Berwick*; of the chevalier *de Hoquincourt*, who lost his life in the engagement; and of *Hamilton*, who was taken prisoner. In this battle King *James* lost 1500 and King *William* about 500 men. After this defeat, King *James* retir'd to *Dublin*, where he stay'd but one day, from thence to *Waterford*, whence he sail'd for *France*; after which King *William* laid siege to *Limerick*, but was oblig'd to raise it, and return'd to *England* the 6th of *September*.

Q. Did nothing happen after this?

A. The year following (1691) the King of *France* sent a fresh body of forces into *Ireland*, which joining with those of the late King, form'd one body; several battles were fought, but with ill success on King *James*'s side, and in that which was fought at *Aghrim*, *July* 12th, *St. Ruth*, the *French* general, who commanded the army, was kill'd; after which the *English* generals, (of whom general *Ginkle* was the chief) possess'd themselves

of all the strong holds, and even of *Limerick*, (where *Tyrconnel* was lately dead) which was surrender'd upon very honourable terms, the 3^d of *October*, 1691, and this was the last effort King *James* was able to make.

Q. Did the *Scots* also acknowledge them for their sovereigns?

A. They were proclaim'd King and Queen in that kingdom the 11th of *April*, when three noblemen were sent to *London* to present them with the crown, and to administer the coronation-oath; which was accordingly perform'd at *Whitehall* the 11th of *May*, 1689.

Q. Were King *William* and Queen *Mary* engag'd in no other wars?

A. As the King of *France* exercis'd all manner of hostilities upon the *English*, under pretence of assisting King *James*; not to mention that *England*, by the treaty of *Nimeguen*, was oblig'd to take up arms against all those who should infringe it; King *William* by a manifesto publish'd the 7th of *May*, 1689, proclaim'd war against the *French*, who had before declar'd it with the *Emperor* and the *Dutch*.

Q. Did *England* continue undisturb'd during the King's absence in *Ireland*?

A. No; a horrid conspiracy was carried on in *London*, and other parts of the kingdom; but was discover'd by the prudence and vigilance of the Queen; the *French* fleet appear'd upon the coast in order to assist the conspirators, but notwithstanding that they had a strong faction, the Queen took such prudent measures, that the enemies were repuls'd. However, the *French* beat the confederate *English* and *Dutch* fleets, on the 30th of *June*.

Q. Did not the news of this considerable incident hasten the King's return into *England*?

A. As he knew himself secure in the Queen's conduct and vigilance, he made an end of the campaign, and did not return to *London* till the 11th of *September*.

Q. What happen'd in *Holland*?

A. The King went thither about the middle of *January*, 1691, and it being at that time very difficult to land, he went on board a sloop, accompanied by the duke
of

of *Ormond*, the earls of *Devonshire*, *Dorset*, *Portland* &c. where he continu'd the whole night, expos'd to the severity of the season; and the ice was so prodigiously hard, that it was not without great hazard of his person he got to *Goree*, from whence he set out immediately for the *Hague*, where he arriv'd the 19th of *January*.

Q. How was he receiv'd there?

A. Notwithstanding that the *Dutch* were very much surpriz'd at his arrival, they not having receiv'd the least notice of it, and were therefore not ready to receive him with the magnificence they had design'd; they nevertheless gave the highest testimonies of their joy, and some days after he made his publick entry: the triumphal arches, and the rest of the pomp with which it was grac'd, were the least part of the solemnity, he being receiv'd with the acclamations of the people, who gave the utmost demonstrations of their zeal and affection for this great Prince.

Q. What actions did he perform in *Flanders*?

A. Upon the opening of the campaign, he put himself at the head of his forces, and those of his allies, but not having been able to bring the enemy to a battle, he return'd on the 13th of *April*, into *England*, which the *Queen* had govern'd during his absence, with her usual prudence and conduct.

Q. What happen'd in 1692?

A. The King gain'd a famous naval victory over the *French*, on the 19th of *May*, who by their own confession lost seventeen of their best ships, among which was the admiral; however it is certain they sustain'd a greater loss, not to mention that a great number of transports were burnt in the harbours.

Q. What made the King of *France* hazard a battle, when he knew the consequences of it would be so very fatal to his kingdom, in case he lost it?

A. He depended upon the success of a new conspiracy in *England*, headed by the lord *Preston*, &c. which he flatter'd himself would have extended itself to the *English* fleet.

Q. Did not the King of *England* sustain some loss in the abovemention'd campaigns?

A. He

A. He had the mortification to see *Mons* and *Namure* taken; whereof his allies were the occasion, by not furnishing him with forces sufficient to ward off a blow which he saw impending; however he found this advantage by it, that his presence prevented the *French* from pushing their conquests; but he had the misfortune to leave the *French* masters of the field, in the battle of *Steenkirk*, and yet came off with great honour; for he disputed the victory with so much bravery, that he left them no possibility of reaping any benefit by it; so that the only advantage they gain'd, was barely that of having fought.

Q. Was not another conspiracy carried on against him in 1692?

A. A *Frenchman*, whose name was *Grandval*, undertook to assassinate King *William* in *Flanders*; but the horrid plot being happily discover'd, and the infamous wretch having been fully convicted of the same, he was condemn'd to the punishment due to traitors, and executed at *Eyndenboven*, the 13th of *August*, 1692.

Q. What exploits were perform'd in 1693?

A. About the 18th of *July*, the battle of *Landen* was fought, with almost the same success as that of *Steenkirk*. The confederate forces fought with all imaginable bravery, and King *William* signaliz'd himself on this occasion. About the beginning of *September* following, they laid siege to *Charleroy*, which was oblig'd to capitulate; for as the bad season made the roads impracticable, it was impossible for the army to advance to succour it. They also made themselves masters of *Heidelberg*.

Q. Relate the most considerable events of the year 1694.

A. The most remarkable was that of the death of the illustrious Queen *Mary*, who died of the small-pox, the 28th of *December*.

Q. Pray give the character of that Princess?

A. She was adorned with a solid piety, and an uncommon goodness; had a great sweetness accompany'd with majesty; an air of grandeur, without the least tincture of pride; her conduct was wonderful, and she had the sincerest affection for the King her husband, which

which he as kindly return'd; a virtue so much the more worthy of the highest applause, as it is so rarely met with among the great: finally, she paid an entire submission to the will of her creator, of which she gave convincing proofs in her expiring moments, as she had before done in the whole tenour of her life. The King interr'd her with great magnificence.

Q. Did not her death give a new turn to affairs?

A. No; for altho' the King discovered a sorrow equal to the great loss he had sustain'd, it was not possible for it to abate his courage; for he cross'd over into *Holland*, where he arriv'd the 14th of *May*, 1695, and put himself at the head of the army, as he had done in the preceding campaigns.

Q. What was the success of this campaign?

A. The *French* considering how much blood it had cost them to take *Namur*, and the stratagems they had been forc'd to employ, thought that after having strengthened the fortifications so much as they had done, it would be impregnable; however, King *William* laid siege to it: But as the confederate army could not hinder marshal *Boufflers* from throwing himself into it with a powerful succour, and that the garrison consisted of upwards of 15000 men; this circumstance, join'd to the good condition of the place, made the *French* laugh publicly at this attempt.

Q. Had not the *French* forces sufficient to raise the siege?

A. They had a stronger army commanded by marshal *Villeroy*, than the besiegers; whereupon they began their march, and advanc'd towards *Namur*, of which the marquis *de Guiscard* was governor; but without daring to make the least attack, although the season was not unfavourable, nor the rivers swell'd with floods, so as to hinder their crossing over; as had happened two years before, when King *William* march'd to succour it.

Q. How long did this siege continue?

A. The trenches were open'd the 12th of *July*; the city capitulated the 4th of *August*, and the castle surrender'd the 1st of *September*, N. S. Thus the King of
Great

Great-Britain subdued, in less than seven weeks, by the single force of his arms, one of the strongest places in the world; defended by a strong garrison, and in sight of an hundred thousand brave soldiers, who were inur'd to the fatigues of war.

Q. By whom was the kingdom govern'd during the King's absence?

A. By a regency compos'd of seven of the nobility, whom his Majesty had made choice of before his setting out.

Q. Was the government quiet and undisturb'd at his return?

A. Yes; in outward appearance; but within it was shook with dreadful convulsions, which were fomented by a great number of factious persons.

Q. After what manner?

A. A fresh conspiracy (which was first discover'd by Mess. *Pendergrafs* and *de la Rue*) was carrying on, in the years 1694, 1695, and 1696, of a more horrid nature, and more dangerous in its consequences, than all those which had hitherto been set on foot, being no less than the assassinating of King *William*, and restoring King *James* to his throne.

Q. Who was at the head of it?

A. We may boldly affirm, in one sense, that it was King *James* himself, since it was concerted in his favour; and that he had given out several commissions for the taking up arms.

Q. But was he concern'd in that part of it which affected King *William's* life?

A. We are very much in the dark as to that matter; but those who are for diving into this mystery, must examine the several facts and circumstances therein, and from thence form a judgment.

Q. Relate some of those circumstances?

A. Great preparations were carried on in *France*, both by sea and land, but upon what design, no one could tell; however, when the time for putting them in execution was come, that mystery was clear'd up. The King of *France*, who never reveal'd his projects, but when he fancied himself sure of success, spoke publick-

ly

ly of restoring King *James*, as a thing that must inevitably happen; in consequence whereof that Prince was arriv'd at *Calais*, on the 18th of *February*: but being kept back a day or two by contrary winds, advice was brought him, that a conspiracy had been discover'd against the person of King *William*, which was to have broke out exactly at the time when the *French* were to land in the kingdom.

Q. What steps did King *James* take, when news was brought to him of it?

A. Instead of pursuing his point, as one would have naturally thought he should have done, had he rely'd entirely upon his personal bravery; the strength of his fleet; his land forces, and the adherents he had in the kingdom, who could not be much lessen'd in number, since not above 30 or 40 persons were seiz'd; he, I say, instead of this, waited for the event; but when he found that the King's person was out of danger, and that he must be oblig'd to meet him once again in the field, no farther mention was made of crossing the seas, and the soldiers, with their commander, withdrew without having done any thing.

Q. Did not these several attempts which were made against the King's life, exasperate him so far as to make him endeavour to revenge himself by force of arms, and such like just methods?

A. He carried on the war with the same moderation as before, and pardon'd all the parricides, except, *Charnock*, *King*, *Keys*, *Sir John Friend*, *Sir William Perkins*, *Rockwood*, *Cranburn*, *Lowick*, and *Sir John Fenwick*, who were executed.

Q. In what manner did he receive the proposals for peace which the *French* made him?

A. As tho' the war had affected him no farther than his kingly dignity; and that nothing personal had happen'd in this great quarrel.

Q. As this peace redounded so much to his glory, was it not also of great advantage to him?

A. Undoubtedly, since it secur'd to him the possession of three kingdoms, which the affection of his subjects had bestow'd upon him, and which he had so bravely defended

defended with his sword; not to mention that it procur'd him the restitution of his principality of *Orange*, which he claim'd by hereditary right, and whereof he had been unjustly dispossest'd.

2. Where was this famous treaty concluded, which gave peace to *Europe*?

A. In 1697, and signed *September 10th*, at *Ryswick*, a palace belonging to King *William*, situated between the *Hague* and *Delft*, in *Holland*; a circumstance which reflects great honour on that Prince; and is a manifest proof that he was consider'd as the arbiter of peace and war.

2. Was the peace of *Europe* secur'd by this treaty?

A. King *William* considering that the death of *Charles II.* King of *Spain*, which was thought to be near at hand, would involve *Europe* in fresh troubles; and likewise that as the *English* had disbanded the greatest part of their forces, they would have on great inclination to embark in another war; his Majesty took fresh measures in order to prevent the evils which threatned the Christian world; and concluded *August 19th*, 1698, a treaty of partition with *France*, with respect to the *Spanish* succession, in case that King should die without issue.

2. Did the *French* observe punctually this treaty, after the King of *Spain's* decease?

A. No.

2. What measures did they take?

A. As there is great room to believe, that the sole motive of the *French* King's agreeing to this treaty of partition, was only to amuse King *William* and the *United Provinces*; immediately after the King of *Spain's* death, which happen'd *November 1st*, 1700, N. S. *Lewis XIV.* seiz'd upon the whole *Spanish* monarchy, by virtue of the last will and testament, which his ambassador at *Madrid*, in conjunction with cardinal *Portocarrero*, had caused his Catholick Majesty to make.

2. What turn did the court of *France* give to this violation of the partition-treaty?

A. The *French* ministers declar'd, that their master had neglected the letter of the treaty, and stuck to the spirit of it.

2. Was

Q. Was King *William* satisfy'd with this interpretation?

A. He conceal'd for some time his deep resentments, for the affront which had been put upon him; and having form'd in 1701, a new alliance between *England*, *Holland*, and the Empire, he shew'd the *English* their real and genuine interests; and was preparing to revenge himself on *Lewis XIV.* by open force, and to settle the ballance of *Europe*, when a fall from his horse near *Hampton-Court*, by hastening his death, put at end to all his great designs.

Q. When did this Prince die?

A. The 8th of *March*, 1702, in the fifty-second year of his age, and the fourteenth of his reign, at *Kensington* palace.

Q. Describe the person and qualities of this Monarch?

A. King *William* was of a middle stature, but ill-shap'd, and somewhat round shoulder'd; he had an oval face; a light-brown complexion, a *Roman* nose; his eyes lively and piercing; he never look'd so well as on horse-back, as if nature had form'd him to command in the field. But the defects of his body were compensated by the perfections of his mind; he had a quick, ready, attentive, and penetrating wit; a sound judgment; an admirable forecast; a strong memory, and a calm and intrepid courage. Besides *Dutch*, which was his native language, he spoke *French* to a great perfection, and *English* and *German* tolerably well: but that in which he was best skill'd, was the art of war. He had a perfect knowledge of the different interests of the princes of *Europe*. He was indefatigable in the field, and in the cabinet; seldom trusting to his generals or his secretaries, but gave out his orders with his own mouth, and writ all dispatches of any importance with his own hand. But these fine qualities were not without some alloy; he was covetous to a fault, and wherever he exerted his liberality, it was in the most profuse manner; as he knew little how to reward, he knew as little how to punish; his clemency being sometimes as ill plac'd, as at other times his severity. War was his

greatest delight, and hunting and shooting were his usual diversions. He lov'd the company of witty men, and had a particular affection for Monsieur de St. Evremont. In a word, *William Prince of Orange*, and King of *Great-Britain*, was one of the greatest men of his age. He always declar'd himself an enemy to tyranny and oppression; and, after having preserv'd his own country, was the deliverer of *England*, and the defender of the freedom of *Europe*.

Queen ANNE, XLIXth Sovereign of England.

And Sixth of *Great-Britain*.

From 1701-2 to 1714.

Emperors.		Pope.	
LEOPOLD	1658	CLEMENT XI.	1700
JOSEPH	1705	King of France.	
CHARLES	1711	LEWIS XIV.	1643

Q. DID not the death of this great Prince whom you now describ'd, occasion some changes in *England*, and the posture of affairs in *Europe*?

A. It at first cast a great damp upon such of the *English* as had been friends to the late King, who were distinguish'd by the name of *Whigs*; and threw the *Dutch* into the utmost consternation. But *Anne Stuart*, second daughter of king *James II.* the illustrious consort of *George Prince of Denmark*, who succeeded King *William III.* soon remov'd all their fears, by declaring that she was firmly resolv'd to carry on the same design which her predecessor had form'd, in order to restore the balance of power in *Europe*.

Q. What was this design?

A. To

A. To oblige the King of *France* to recall his grandson *Philip*, whom he had seated on the throne of *Spain*; and to bestow that Kingdom on *Charles*, the Emperor *Leopold's* second son. This was the chief motive of the grand alliance which King *William* form'd with the Emperor and the *States-General* in 1701, and to which the Kings of *Prussia* and *Portugal*, the Duke of *Savoy*, and several other Princes afterwards acceded.

Q. Did Queen *Anne* herself form this signal resolution?

A. It being debated in the privy-council, whether war should be declar'd against *France* and *Spain*, it was carried for the affirmative by a plurality of voices.

Q. Did this affair meet with some opposition in the council?

A. It consisted of two different parties; the *Tories*, or the rigid friends to episcopacy; and the *Whigs*, or those of a moderate temper. The former, who were headed by the earl of *Rochester*, uncle to the Queen by the mother's side, were for engaging in the war no otherwise than as auxiliaries; but the *Whigs*, the chief whereof were the dukes of *Devonshire* and *Somerset*, insisted that it was absolutely necessary to make good the engagements, by which the late King had bound himself; and the earl of *Marlborough*, seconded by the earl of *Pembroke*, made the scale turn on the *Whigs* side, and accordingly war was proclaim'd with *France* the 4th of May, 1702.

Q. What was the success thereof?

A. An almost uninterrupted series of prosperities, victories, and triumphs, on the side of the high-allies, and on that of the *English* in particular, for nine years successively.

Q. What were the most remarkable transactions in *Flanders* in 1702?

A. The *French* army having taken the field early, under the command of marshal *Boufflers*, invested *Keyserfewert*, and the forces of the allies to the very gates of *Nimeguen*; but no sooner had the lord *Marlborough* put himself at the head of the confederate army, than the *French* were oblig'd to fly in their turn, and to keep on the

defensive; and they were dispossess'd of the places they held in the *Spanish Guelderland*, viz. *Venlo*, *Ruremonde*, and *Stevenswaert* after which they took the city and citadel of *Liege*.

Q. What were the united fleets of *England* and *Holland* doing all this while?

A. The 21st of *May* of this year, her Majesty declar'd his royal highness *George Prince of Denmark*, lord high admiral of *England* and *Ireland*. A resolution had been taken to execute a project form'd by *King William* for the storming of *Cadix*, and accordingly a good number of land forces were ship'd off under the command of the duke of *Ormond*; but whether it were through the fault of some of the generals, who bent all their thoughts on the plunder of port *St. Mary*; or to the division that arose between *Sir George Rook* the *English* admiral, and the general of the land forces, the attempt upon *Cadix* came to nothing.

Q. What action did the fleet perform in its return homewards?

A. The admiral being inform'd by *Mr. Beauvoir* the chaplain of the *Pembroke*, that a *French* squadron, consisting of thirty men of war, under the command of *Monfieur Chateau-Regnault*, and twenty-two *Spanish* galleons, richly laden, were arrived at *Vigo*; he, in concert with the duke of *Ormond*, attack'd them, the 12th of *October*, and took or burnt them all: after which the fleet return'd to *England*, laden with plunder to the value of upwards of a million sterling.

Q. What were the transactions in 1703?

A. The duke of *Marlborough* open'd the campaign with the siege of the important town of *Bonne*, which was reduc'd in a few days. Afterwards the *French* standing upon the defensive within the lines in *Brabant*, the lord *Marlborough* besieg'd and carried the town and castle of *Huy*; after which the *English* general propos'd the attacking the *French* in their lines; but that point being debated, it was judg'd impracticable, so that they were oblig'd to end the campaign with the siege and conquest of *Limburgh*.

Q. Why

Q. Why did not the *French* exert themselves this year in the *Low-Countries*?

A. Their policy was to stand on the defensive, while their superiority in *Italy*, on the *Rhine*, and in the very heart of the empire, gave them the most signal advantages. For while the duke of *Marlborough* was pursuing his triumphs in *Flanders*, Prince *Eugene* had left *Italy*, in order to solicit reinforcements at the court of *Vienna*; the duke of *Savoy*, who had lately enter'd into the grand alliance, was in the utmost danger of being forc'd out of his dominions, had he not been immediately succour'd, in an almost miraculous manner, by count *Starembergh*. Count *Tallard* had made himself master of the town of *Brisac*, and retaken the strong fortress of *Landau*, after having defeated the *German* army at *Spire*; and the elector of *Bavaria*, either from a principle of ambition or resentment, having declar'd in favour of *France*, had seiz'd the imperial cities of *Ulm*, *Ratisbon*, *Ausburg*, and *Passau*; and being strongly supported by great supplies of men and money from *France*, made the whole empire tremble, and threatned to march directly to *Vienna*.

Q. What was done in this delicate juncture?

A. The Queen of *England* in 1704, by the advice of her ministers, took the generous resolution of saving the empire; and the duke of *Marlborough*, the principal author of this grand project, having prevail'd with the *States-General* to concur in it, he put himself at the head of the confederate army; march'd into *Germany* with incredible speed; drove the *French* and *Bavarians* from the entrenchments which they had rais'd at *Schellenberg*, to hinder him from passing the *Danube*, took the town of *Donawert* situated on this river; and being afterwards join'd by a considerable body of forces under the command of Prince *Eugene*, these two illustrious warriors attack'd, the 13th of *August*, 1704, N. S. the *French* and *Bavarians* at *Blenheim*, where they gain'd a most signal and compleat victory; after which they drove the *French* out of *Germany*, reduc'd *Landau*, and conquer'd all *Bavaria*.

Q. Was the duke of *Marlborough* well rewarded for the great and important services he had done the empire?

A. Not to mention the principality of *Mindelheim*, which the Emperor bestow'd upon him; the rich trophies which he brought from *Bavaria*, and the considerable presents that were made him by several *German* Princes; at his return to *England* he was honour'd with the applauses of both houses of Parliament; and the Queen gave him *Woodstock* park, where, at her own expence, she built him the noble palace of *Bleinheim*, to perpetuate the memory of his victory. This year Sir *George Rook*, after having taken *Gibraltar*, on the 14th of *July*; engaged the *French* fleet, commanded by Count *de Toulonse*, off of *Malaga*, when the victory remain'd doubtful.

Q. Were the allies equally successful in all parts this year?

A. Very far from it; for notwithstanding that *England* and *Holland* sent succours to the *Portuguese*, they nevertheless were not able to hinder the *Spaniards* from making some little conquests; and the *French* in *Italy* dispossess'd the duke of *Savoy* of several strong holds.

Q. What actions did the duke of *Marlborough* perform in 1705?

A. He first march'd towards the *Moselle*, at the head of the best part of the confederate army, in order to execute a great design on that side; but whether it were the death of the Emperor *Leopold*, which happening at that juncture, retarded the preparations which the *Germans* were to make; or from their usual slowness, prince *Lewis* of *Baden* having fail'd the *English* general, by not sending the troops, artillery, and other necessaries, which the Empire had engag'd to furnish for the siege of *Saar-Lewis*; the duke of *Marlborough* was oblig'd to return with great precipitation into *Flanders*.

Q. Did not the *French* make an advantage of his absence?

A. So well, that they soon recover'd *Huy* and *Liege*; but while they were taking measures, in order to prevent the return of the duke into the *Low-Countries*, that
able

able general got the start of them by his prodigious diligence; drove them out of *Liege*; dispossess'd them of *Huy*, and forc'd them to retreat within their lines, which they levell'd, and by that means put a great extent of country under contribution: and the *Dutch* frontiers were extended by the taking of *Leeve* and *Sansvliet*; but whilst they were attacking the latter, which was a very inconsiderable place, the *French* surpriz'd the garrison of *Diest*.

Q. What was done in *Germany*?

A. The sudden retreat of the duke of *Marlborough* from the *Moselle*, having puff'd up the courage of the *French* on that side, they recover'd *Treves* and *Homburgh*, and attack'd the camp at *Lauterburgh*; but the *Germans*, who defended it, having gallantly oppos'd the marshals *de Villars* and *Marfin*, till such time as prince *Lewis* of *Baden* had drawn together forces sufficient to reinforce them; they forc'd the *French* from their lines, and dispossess'd them of *Drusenheim*, *Haguenau*, and other posts; and the *Germans* extended even their quarters into the enemy's country.

Q. Were the allies as successful in *Portugal*?

A. The earl of *Galway*, had succeeded duke *Schomberg* in the command of the *English* forces in that country; and having by his prudence and vigilance restor'd order to the confederate army, fortune at first prov'd pretty favourable to them, by their taking of *Salvaserra* and *Marvan*, and dispossessing the *Spaniards* of *Sarcas*, *Valencia*, *d'Alcantara*, and *Albuquerque*; but they fail'd of their main design, which was the reducing of *Badajoz*, by the unhappy accident which happen'd to the lord *Galway*, who lost his right hand; and was thereby oblig'd to leave the direction of that siege to baron *Fagel*, whom marshal *de Tessé* oblig'd to raise it.

Q. Did any remarkable transaction happen in other parts?

A. The most memorable incident this year, was the reducing the city of *Barcelona*, and of the whole province of *Catalonia*, to the obedience of King *Charles III.* This great project had been form'd by the Prince of *Hesse d'Armstadt*; but, notwithstanding that this Prince had
been

been unfortunately slain in the attack of *Montjuich*; the earl of *Peterborough*, carried it on with so much vigour and resolution, when he saw that the ice was broke, and that he himself would reap all the glory of the success; that having made himself master of *Barcelona* in a few days, the whole Principality submitted to him, and implor'd the protection of *Queen Anne*.

Q. Why did not the *French* send immediately a strong force to succour *Catalonia*?

A. They were attack'd from so many quarters, that it was impossible for them to make head against all; not to mention that they follow'd a plan this year, that did not meet with Success; which was to end the war in *Italy*, that exhausted them both of men and money; and keeping upon the defensive in all other parts, they exerted all their efforts in order to oppress and reduce the duke of *Savoy*; but this Prince stood his ground with the most heroick bravery, and the campaign of 1706 chang'd the whole face of affairs.

Q. What were the chief events thereof?

A. *France*, that never fails of new resources, had in the beginning of the year form'd three great projects; whereof the first was totally to ruin King *Charles's* party in *Spain*; the second, to dispossess the allies of all their conquests in the *Low Countries*; and the third, to put an end to the war in *Italy*, by pushing Prince *Eugene* back to the *Trentin*, and by driving the duke of *Savoy* out of his capital; which was the only city that was left him in all his dominions.

Q. Did these great projects meet with success?

A. No; they all miscarried; in the first place Sir *John Leake* being arrived very seasonably to succour *Barcelona*; and upon his approach, having oblig'd the count *de Toulouse* to retire with the utmost precipitation, who, with the *French* fleet, kept the town block'd up by sea; King *Philip* and the marshal *de Tesse*, who were carrying on the siege thereof by land, were oblig'd to raise it with so much the more haste, as the earl of *Peterborough* began to harass them with a body of troops which he had just got together: this event happen'd the 12th of *May*, N. S. a day very remarkable
from

from the sun's suffering a total eclipse. In the second place, eleven days after, the duke of *Marlborough* entirely defeated at *Ramillies* the *French* army, commanded by the duke of *Bavaria* and the marshal *de Villeroy*; which victory was follow'd by a general revolution in the *Low Countries*, where an uninterrupted series of conquests attended the confederate army; *Louvain*, *Malines*, *Lier*, *Brussels*, *Antwerp*, *Ghent*, and *Bruges* opening their gates to them. And in the third place, Prince *Eugene* having by his great ability remov'd all the obstacles that had been laid in his way; and by one of the most memorable marches that was ever known, having joined the duke of *Savoy*; these two Princes attack'd the *French* army commanded by the duke of *Orleans*, and marshal *de Marsin*, with so much resolution and bravery, even in their very trenches, that he totally routed them. This event, which happened the 7th of *September*, N. S. was immediately follow'd by the relieving of *Turin*, which after having sustain'd a long siege of four months, was reduc'd to the utmost extremities; and some time after, with the total expulsion of the *French* out of all *Italy*; a bitter pill to swallow, tho' they gilded it by a treaty made at *Milan*, by which they engag'd themselves to evacuate all the strong holds which they possess'd in *Lombardy* in King *Philip's* name.

Q. What became of this Prince after the fatal blow he receiv'd at *Barcelona*?

A. He would never have return'd again into *Spain*, had the allies but made their advantage of the favourable opportunity with which they were presented, of conquering the whole kingdom. 'Tis true indeed, that the marquis *das Minas* and the earl of *Galway*, who commanded the confederate army; after having reduc'd *Alcantara*, *Placentia*, and some other places, marched immediately to *Madrid*, which, on *June 24*, acknowledged K. *Charles III.* But, instead of going thither, to join them with the same dispatch, (whether it were owing to a misunderstanding that happen'd between King *Charles's* first minister and the earl of *Peterborough*, or from the jealousy which the latter had of the lord *Galway*, and the apprehensions he was under that he

he would deprive him of the glory of conquering all Spain;) King *Charles* went to pay his devotions very unseasonably at *Notre Dame de Montserrat*, and afterwards made a useless visit to the city of *Saragossa*; while, on the other side, the earl of *Peterborough* amus'd himself in the kingdom of *Valencia*. Thus neither of them join'd the *Portuguese* army, 'till after it had, for a long time, spent itself in vain, in the neighbourhood of *Madrid*, and in the camp of *Guadalaxara*; and that they had given King *Philip* time to return into *Spain*, at the head of a vigorous and superior army, which oblig'd the allies to retire with great precipitation into *Valencia*. This year is also memorable for the Union of the two kingdoms of *England* and *Scotland*; which was concluded *July 23*.

Q. What were the remarkable incidents in 1707?

A. This year plainly show'd the vicissitude of all human affairs; for the *French* having made greater efforts to recover their losses, than the allies did to improve their victories; fortune seem'd to declare in favour of the former. In *Spain*, the earl of *Galway*, having attack'd, very unseasonably, without King *Charles's* consent, and against the advice of the earl of *Peterborough* the *Spanish* army at *Almanza*, commanded by the duke of *Berwick*, and much superior in number to his own; he was entirely defeated, on the 25th of *April*, and oblig'd to retire into *Catalonia*, with the shatter'd remains of his army, and to abandon the kingdom of *Valencia*. This victory having puff'd up the hearts of the *Spaniards*, they dispossest the *Portuguese* of *Serpa* and *Moura*, and afterwards retook *Ciudad Rodrigo*; while the duke of *Orleans* besieg'd successfully the city of *Lerida*. On the other side, marshal *Villars* having forc'd the lines and retrenchments of the *Germans* at *Biehl* and *Stolhoffen*, and exacted heavy contributions from the duchy of *Wirtemberg*; would infallibly have push'd the conquests of his victorious army, if the elector of *Hanover*, late King of *Great-Britain*, who took upon himself the command of the forces of the empire, (re-inforced by the *Saxons* whom the duke of *Marlborough* sent to him) had not stop't the progress of his arms; or rather, if he had
not

Not been oblig'd to send off large detachments in order to save *Toulon*, to which the duke of *Savoy*, and Prince *Eugene*, assisted by the *English* fleet under the command of Sir *Cloudefley Shovel*, had laid siege. The *English* were so much the more affected with the ill success of this great enterprize, as the duke of *Marlbrough* endeavoured in vain to bring the *French* to an engagement in *Flanders*, who always kept in inaccessible intrenchments. In fine, the Emperor was the only sovereign among the confederates, who, this year, knew how to fish in troubled waters; for whilst his friends and enemies were employed in other parts, his forces made the conquest of the kingdom of *Naples*. But, notwithstanding the various ill success of the last campaign, the two houses of the first Parliament of *Great-Britain*, as a testimony of their zeal and affection, presented an address to her Majesty, wherein they declared, *That no peace could be safe or honourable, for her Majesty, or her allies, if Spain and the West Indies were suffer'd to remain under the power of the house of Bourbon.*

Q. What steps did *Lewis XIV.* take upon the news thereof?

A. He resolv'd to make the authors of that address repent of what they had done; and being puffed up with the small advantages he had gain'd in 1707, he form'd two great projects for the year 1708. The first was, the making the dominions of the Queen of *Great-Britain* the seat of the war; and to set the Pretender, whom he stiled King *James III.* upon the throne; and the second to drive the allies from the conquests they had made after the battle of *Ramillies*: But both these enterprizes met with an ill success, equal to the rashness with which they had been undertaken; and fortune, which the foregoing year seem'd to waver, now turn'd the scale in favour of the grand alliance. The *English* having put a strong squadron of 40 men of war to sea, under the command of Sir *George Byng*, in *February*, much earlier than the *French* expected; the Pretender, who was on board the *French* fleet, did but just show himself on the coasts of *Scotland*, without daring to go ashore; and found himself very happy in having escap'd the

the pursuit of the *English*, since they took one ship wherein were several of his officers. But notwithstanding this deportment, the *French* gain'd their point in *Flanders*; where the credit which the elector of *Bavaria* had still preserv'd in that country, together with the artful management of the count *de Berghyck*, so far influenced the inhabitants of *Ghent* and *Bruges*, that they immediately open'd their gates to the *French* troops; the dukes of *Vendome* and *Burgundy*, who commanded them, having gain'd a day's march over the duke of *Marlborough*, would infallibly have very much perplex'd the allies, had not Monsieur *Labene*, governor of the castle of *Ghent*, amus'd the enemy two days. While these things were doing, Prince *Eugene* join'd the duke of *Marlborough* with a reinforcement of above 30,000 *Imperialists*; and these two brave warriors having march'd with great diligence to the camp at *Lessines*; pass'd the *Dender*, and afterwards the *Schelde* at *Oudenarde*; came up with the *French* near this last place, which they had flatter'd themselves they should have carried, before the confederates had advanc'd to succour them. The *French* generals might have avoided coming to battle, but depending on the advantage of the ground, and the superiority of their forces, they resolv'd to venture, but had occasion to repent it; for victory declar'd in favour of the allies, and knew no other heroes than those she had crown'd with never fading laurels at *Blenheim*, *Ramillies* and *Turin*. As the ground gave scarce but the infantry an opportunity of engaging, that of the *French* was soon broken and routed; and would have been entirely defeated, if the night had not favour'd the retreat of the scatter'd remains of the *French* army, which withdrew to *Ghent* and *Bruges*, in order to take breath. The Princes of *France*, and the *Pretender*, were the fatal witnesses to this defeat; but the Prince of *Hanover* (now King of *Great-Britain*) who was in the confederate army, fought with the utmost bravery, and won immortal glory. This action happened the 11th of *July*, N. S. Some time after which *, the victors went

* *August 13*, N. S.

and laid siege to *Lisle*, a city of great importance. An enterprize of so bold a nature surpriz'd all *Europe*, and alarm'd the *French*, who exerted themselves to the utmost, in order to prevent its succeeding. And their generals, notwithstanding that they were reinforc'd by the garrisons of several places, which the duke of *Berwick* brought them; did not yet dare to attack the army under the duke of *Marlbrough's* command, which cover'd the siege; but contented themselves with cutting from the allies all communication with *Brussels*, which supply'd them with all their ammunition and provisions. Upon this, the duke of *Marlbrough* thought of an expedient; for having sent for a small body of forces, which, under the command of general *Earle*, had alarm'd the coasts of *France*, and which took post at *Leffingen*; he by that means open'd a communication with *Ostend*, whence he sent for a considerable convoy of all necessaries. The duke de *Vendome* having notice of it, sent Monsieur de *la Motte* at the head of 24000 men, in order to intercept it; but general *Webb*, whom the duke of *Marlbrough* had dispatch'd with 6000 men to guard the convoy, totally routed the *French* at *Wynendale*; when the convoy being happily arriv'd at the camp of the allies, the city of *Lisle* surrender'd some days after, viz. on the 23^d of *October* 1708, N. S. and as they were tender of the lives of a brave set of men, and willing to preserve a work so perfect in its kind, as the citadel of *Lisle*, they only carried it on by sap. Upon this, the *French* redoubled their efforts, in order to distress the allies. The duke of *Vendome*, after having won the post at *Leffingen*, and cut off the communication of the allies with *Ostend*, by great inundations between *Bruges* and *Newport*, and by their intrenchment along the *Schelde*, sent several parties into the field, in order to harraßs the *Dutch*, and particularly to plunder and ravage the district of *Bois le-duc*. But the generals of the allies being indefatigably intent upon their business; and the duke of *Marlbrough* having found means to provide provisions out of the country of *Artois*, and the districts of *Furnes* and *Dixmude*; the elector of *Bavaria*, as

his last shift, march'd to attack *Brussels* at the head of 15000 chosen men; but general *Paschal*, the governor of *Brussels*, sustain'd all the attacks of the enemy with so much resolution and bravery; and Prince *Eugene* and the duke of *Marlborough* having routed the *French* who guarded the *Schelde*; came, or rather flew, so seasonably to their assistance, that the duke of *Bavaria* was oblig'd to * retire with the utmost precipitation and confusion; and some days after marshal *Boufflers* surrender'd the citadel of *Lisle* upon honourable † terms. 'Tis very probable that the *French*, imagining as the season was so far advanc'd, the allies would content themselves with the conquest of that important place, they thereupon separated their army; but the duke of *Marlborough* and Prince *Eugene*, who were affected with the loss of *Ghent*, resolv'd to take it before the end of the campaign. They invested it the 20th of *December*, N. S. opened the trenches the 24th; and notwithstanding the great severity of the winter, they oblig'd Monsieur *de la Motte* to surrender up the town the 31st, notwithstanding he had 30 battallions and 19 squadrons. The reduction of *Ghent*, was follow'd with the enemy's abandoning *Bruges*, *Plaffendael*, and *Leffingen*; and in the whole we may justly affirm, that though we trace all the modern historians, we shall not find a campaign carry'd on to so unusual a length, or so renown'd for a continu'd series of memorable actions, as that whereof we have given a general idea.

Q. What remarkable transactions happen'd this year in other parts of *Europe*?

A. The duke of *Savoy*, like an able politician, laid hold of this favourable opportunity of revenging himself upon *France*; and having eluded the vigilance of marshal *Villars*, who was order'd to oppose his march over mount *Cenis*, as if his royal highness had intended to penetrate into *Dauphine*; he turning short towards *Sessana*; dispossest the *French*, who made little resistance of the fortress of *Exilles*, of fort *la Perouse*, the valley of *St. Martin*, and *Fenestrelles*. By these conquests this

* November 27; N. S.

† December 9, N. S.

Prince secur'd his own dominions against France, and gain'd a free entrance into the enemy's country; and besides this great advantage, he made a fortunate diversion in favour of *Charles III*; so that, as the duke *de Noailles* was oblig'd to send a great detachment to reinforce marshal *Villars*, he was by that means prevented from sending any detachment towards *Rouffillon*. 'Tis true indeed, that the duke of *Orleans* dispossest the allies of the city of *Tortosa*; and the 'chevalier *d'Hasfeld* those of *Denia* and *Alicant*; but Sir *John Leake* and general *Stanhope* gain'd much greater advantages over King *Philip*; the former by reducing the fruitful island and kingdom of *Sardinia*, to the obedience of King *Charles*; and the latter by the conquest of *Port-Mahon*, and of the whole island of *Minorca*, which he took care to preserve for the *British* nation. On the other side, the *Spaniards* having kept upon the defensive in *Estremadura*; the *Portuguese* army, reinforc'd with some *English* troops, put *Moura* and *Serpa*, which had been abandon'd by the enemies, into a state of defence; and made an incursion into *Andalusia*, where they got some plunder. The only remarkable transaction that happen'd in *Germany*, was, that the elector of *Hanover*, with some indifferent forces of the empire, who were but ill provided, baffled the design which the duke of *Bavaria* had form'd of penetrating into the empire; insomuch that the latter, finding he could do nothing in *Alsasia*, went, about the end of the campaign, and attack'd *Brussels*, but with ill success. Not long after, *Great-Britain* was in deep sorrow and affliction, for the death of Prince *George* of *Denmark*, which happen'd the 28th of *October* 1708, a wise, just, and kind Prince: who, with his consort Queen *Anne*, was a most perfect pattern of conjugal affection; who lov'd the *English* nation, was belov'd by them, and was universally regretted. Besides this, the year 1708. is remarkable for several great events: the *Muscovites* gain'd several advantages over the *Swedes*; the *Electo*r *Palatine* was restor'd to the possession of the *Upper Palatinate*, with the same rank and title that had been vested in the house of *Bavaria* by the treaty of *Munster*; the elector of *Brunswick-Lunenburgh* or *Hanover*, was at last acknowledg'd such by the electoral college; the duke

of *Savoy* receiv'd the investiture of *Mantua* and *Monferrat*; the ban of the empire was publish'd against the duke of *Mantua*; and lastly, by the good offices and powerful solicitations of *Great-Britain* and *Holland*, the succession to the principality of *Neuchâtel*, was decided in favour of the King of *Prussia*.

Q. What were the transactions of the year 1709?

A. The King of *France*, finding that instead of having succeeded in his last projects, the allies had gain'd fresh advantages over the two crowns, listen'd at last to the voice of his subjects, who, oppress'd with the havock of war and famine, besought him to procure them peace and bread; and by the interposition of Monsieur *Petkum*, the minister of *Holstein*, a negotiation was carry'd on at the *Hague*.

Q. What was the success thereof?

A. The president *de Rouille*, and the marquis *de Torcy*, with the ministers of the *Emperor*, of *Great-Britain*, and the *States-General*, agreed May 28, on forty articles preliminary to a general peace; but as it was stipulated by one of these articles, that King *Philip* should yield up and quit *Spain* in two months; *Lewis XIV.* could not acquiesce with such hard conditions; and therefore did not think himself oblig'd to ratify the preliminaries which his ministers had sign'd.

Q. What measures did the allies take on this occasion?

A. Incens'd at the equivocal proceedings of the *French*, they resolv'd to improve their last advantages, and to prosecute the war with vigour. Accordingly Prince *Eugene* and the duke of *Marlborough* put themselves at the head of the confederate army, and march'd towards the enemy, whom they found entrench'd in the plain of *Lens* under the command of marshal *Villars*; but finding it impossible to bring them to an engagement, they besieg'd the important city of *Tournay*; and in two months from the first opening of the trenches the city and * citadel was surrender'd to them. Some days after the allies † attack'd the *French*, who being advantageously encamp'd, and entrench'd at *Blaregnies* or

* *Septemb* 3. N. S. † *September* 11, N. S.

Malplaquet, and fighting with great bravery under the command of the marshals *de Villars* and *Boufflers*; repuls'd the confederates several times, and made a dreadful slaughter of the *Dutch* infantry; but at last they were oblig'd to submit to the vigour and superior bravery of the *English*, who headed by the earl of *Orkney*, general *Wishers*, the duke of *Argyle*, and some other young noblemen, drove the *French* from their strongest entrenchments, and open'd a passage to the cavalry of the allies, who soon oblig'd those of the enemy to give way. Marshal *de Villars*, in the heat of the engagement, having receiv'd a dangerous wound from Captain *Guy*, which had incapacitated him for the command, marshal *de Boufflers*; made an orderly retreat, like a brave and experienc'd captain. Thus victory attended on the confederate arms, but it cost them * dear; however it was soon crown'd with the taking of *Mons*, on the 20th of *October*, which the *French* would fain have cover'd.

Q. Did the allies triumph equally in all places?

A. Nothing, or worse than nothing, was done in *Germany*; which at last oblig'd the elector of *Hanover* to lay down his command, as his army was in a weak condition, and in want of all necessaries. The campaign in *Piedmont* and *Dauphine*, fell very much short of expectation, by reason of the disputes that arose between the courts of *Vienna* and *Turin*, with respect to the claim which the duke of *Savoy* laid to some dependencies of the *Milanese*. The *Spaniards*, under the command of the marquis *de Baye*, defeated the *Portuguese* on the banks of the *Caya*; and the earl of *Galway*, who had been always unsuccessful since the unfortunate battle of *Almanza*, very narrowly escap'd being taken prisoner. Some days before lieutenant general *Stanhope* advanc'd with the *English* fleet, in order to succour the castle of *Alicant*; but finding it impracticable, he caus'd it to be surrender'd upon honourable terms, in order to save the lives of the few brave men that remain'd alive; and who had behav'd with the utmost intrepidity. On the other side, general *Staremberg*, who the year before had check'd the progress of the duke of *Orleans's* arms

* They lost 18000 men, and the French about 15000.

in *Catalonia*, made himself master of *Balaguer*, where he took 900 prisoners. Besides the abovemention'd events relating to the grand alliance, the year 1709. will be memorable for the signal victory which the *Czar* of *Muscovy* gain'd at *Pultowa*, the 8th of *July*, N. S. over the *King* of *Sweden*; whose army having been entirely defeated, that unfortunate Prince was obliged to fly for shelter to *Bender* in the *Turkish* territories, where he was received with greater humanity than he would perhaps have met with from the *Christians*.

Q. What were the transactions of 1710?

A. As soon as the campaign in 1709 was ended in *Flanders*, the *French* made new overtures of peace, and *M. Petkum* was again employ'd in renewing the negotiations; but the conferences which were held at *Gertruydenberg*, from *March* to *July*, were as unsuccessful as those of the *Hague* had been the preceding year; and the ministers of *France* withdrew, but not without discovering some resentments against those of the *States-General*, who carried on the negotiations in the name of the rest of the allies, upon pretence that due respect had not been shewn to their character.

Q. What was the true cause of the ill success of this second negotiation?

A. The *Dutch* strongly insisted that *King Philip* should give up *Spain* and the *West-Indies*; but the *French* resolv'd they should remain in his power; and excited by the distractions which the famous *Dr. Sacheverel* had rais'd in *England*; and having by their emissaries, particularly by the *Abbé Gautier*, founded those who were bent upon the duke of *Marlborough's* ruin, and of those ministers who adher'd to him: the *French*, I say, depending upon a sudden change in *England*, which might be favourable to their interests, would come to no other terms than the engaging themselves to furnish a considerable sum of money, in order to oblige *King Philip* to quit *Spain*, and content himself with *Sardinia* and *Sicily*; and upon the refusal of the *Dutch* to accept of this offer, they suddenly broke up the conferences at *Gertruydenberg*, *July* 13th, N. S.

Q. What steps did the allies now take?

A. The

A. The *Dutch* made loud complaints against the intriguing proceedings of the *French*, who under specious pretences, had eluded the fundamental point of the last negotiation; and *Queen Anne*, who had not as yet chang'd her views, with respect to the affairs of *Europe*, approv'd the conduct of the *States-General*. Thus the war was carried on, and *Prince Eugene* and the duke of *Marlborough*, dispossels'd the *French* of the towns of *Doway*, *Bethune*, *S. Venant*, and *Aire*.

Q. What was transacted in other parts?

A. The elector of *Hanover* having prudently laid down the command of the army of the Empire; and the duke of *Savoy*, besides his discontent at the court of *Vienna*, being indispos'd, and incapable of acting, nothing was done worth taking notice of, either in *Germany* or *Piedmont*; but to make amends for this, the campaign being carried on very briskly in *Spain*, was crown'd with great success: for *King Philip* having put himself at the head of his army, reinforc'd by some *Walloons*, advanc'd first towards *Balaguer*; making shew as if he intended to attack *King Charles*, who was encamp'd near that place, with a much inferior force. The armies continu'd for some days in sight of one another, without coming to an engagement; but no sooner were those of the allies join'd by the reinforcements which lieutenant general *Stanhope* had brought from *Italy*, and some other troops from the *Lampourdan*, than *King Charles* march'd towards the enemy's; and general *Stanhope* having pass'd the *Noguera* with great diligence, where he met with nineteen squadrons of *Spaniards*, supported by two brigades of foot, posted at *Almenara*; attack'd * them with so much vigour and success, that in less than half an hour, with fifteen squadrons of horse and dragoons, he broke them, put about fifteen hundred of them to the sword; and would have gain'd a compleat victory over them, if the night coming on, had not favour'd their retreat under the cannon of *Lerida*. *King Charles*, in order to improve this advantage, pursued his competitor

* July 27, N. S. 1710.

with

with incredible speed, and coming up with him near *Saragossa*, * totally routed his army, in sight of that city, where the conquerors enter'd in a triumphant manner. King *Philip*, who, by reason of his indisposition, had been prevented from coming to the battle, withdrew with a small guard; and the scatter'd remains of his army dispers'd in different parts. Fortune favour'd the allies with a new opportunity of making themselves masters of all *Spain*, if they had known how to improve it; but instead of sending a considerable force towards *Navarre*, in order to intercept the succours which the duke of *Vendome* was bringing to the vanquish'd; they march'd directly to *Madrid*, either from the hopes they had of plundering *Castile*, or of being reinforc'd by the *Portuguese*. Frustrated in the latter, and terrify'd with the apprehensions of being overpower'd by King *Philip*'s forces, which increased daily, the allies took a resolution of retiring into *Catalonia*; but in their retreat, the enemy pursu'd them so close, that eight batallions, and as many squadrons of *English*, having very unseasonably fortify'd themselves in the little town of *Brihuega*, the duke of *Vendome* attack'd them on a sudden, and oblig'd them to surrender themselves † prisoners of war. Upon the first news that general *Staremburg* heard of the danger the *English* were in, he march'd back in order to succour them, with the *Germans* and *Dutch*; but unfortunately meeting with the *Spanish* army near *Villa-Viciosa*, he was oblig'd to come to an ‡ engagement. The battle was hot and bloody, and was parted only by the night. The allies arrogated the victory to themselves, and indeed they had some marks of it; but the *Spaniards* gather'd the fruits of it, and oblig'd them to quit *Aragon*, and fortify themselves in *Catalonia*. Thus the ill success of the allies at *Brihuega*, tarnish'd the laurels they had won at *Almenara* and *Saragossa*; and notwithstanding those two defeats, King *Philip* had the satisfaction and advantage to receive the most signal testimonies of the fidelity of the *Castilians*; and also to see *Bala-guer* abandon'd by the allies.

Q. How was this ill success taken in England?

* *Aug.* 20, N. S. 1710. † *Dec.* 9, N. S. ‡ *Dec.* 10, N. S.

A. The

A. The duke of *Marlborough's* friends were very much troubled at it; but those who were bent upon the ruin of that illustrious hero, were overjoy'd.

Q. What was their view in this?

A. They justly concluded, that the surest means to make him no longer useful, was to make a peace; and the ill success which had attended upon the arms of the allies in *Spain*, at the conclusion of this campaign, serv'd them for a handle to insinuate, that this was absolutely necessary; and also further'd the projects they had already concerted with the *French* agents.

A. Who was at the head of this pacific cabal?

A. Mr. *Robert Harley* (afterwards earl of *Oxford*) an able man, of an insinuating temper; whose credit was great in the house of commons, which had chose him for their speaker in three successive parliaments; and who, notwithstanding his being dismiss'd from his post of secretary of state, had manag'd matters so well, as still to have free, tho' private access to the Queen.

Q. After what manner did he execute his projects?

A. He began by making the Queen have an ill opinion of the *Whigs*, who, in the trial of Dr. *Sacheverell*, had deliver'd their notions, with great freedom, upon kingly dignity, and hereditary right. He afterwards observ'd to the Queen, who was jealous of her authority, the prodigious power which the duke and dutchess of *Marlborough*, and their near relations had assum'd to themselves in the administration, and in the disposal of favours and employments. Queen *Anne's* mind being thus prejudic'd, they began by removing *Charles Spencer* earl of *Sunderland*, son-in-law to the duke of *Marlborough*, from his post of secretary of state *. The earl of *Godolphin*, whose only son had married the eldest daughter of the aforesaid duke, was quickly after remov'd from his post of lord high-treasurer †: in the next place, the *Whig* parliament, devoted to that minister, was dissolv'd, and another was call, which prov'd a *Tory* one, and at the devotion of the *Triumvirate*, that govern'd in the Queen's name till she died.

* June 14.

† August 8.

Q. Who

Q. Who were the persons that compos'd this *Triumvirate*?

A. The earl of *Oxford*, whose character has been already describ'd, and who was soon made lord high-treasurer; Sir *Simon Harcourt*, who was first made lord-keeper, and afterwards lord high-chancellor, and a peer of the realm; and Mr. *Henry St. John*, who was made secretary of state, and afterwards viscount *Bolingbroke*.

Q. What was done with the duke of *Marlborough*?

A. As the new ministers were not yet well settled in their posts, or had not yet strongly rivetted themselves with *France*, they, for decency sake, suffer'd that illustrious warrior to enjoy the supreme command of the army for some time longer.

Q. What actions did he perform in 1711?

A. Prince *Eugene* being return'd into *Germany* with the imperial and *Palatine* forces, in order to oppose the elector of *Bavaria's* designs, who was advancing towards the *Rhine*, with a considerable body of *French*; all that the duke of *Marlborough* could do, was to force the *French* lines, which they thought impenetrable, and to take *Bouchain*, * in the fight of the enemy, who were 100,000 in number.

Q. What transactions happen'd in *Germany*?

A. None that were remarkable, excepting that King *Charles III.* was peaceably elected and crown'd Emperor in the room of his brother *Joseph*, who died of the small-pox the 17th of *April*, 1711.

Q. Did his death occasion any change in the affairs of *Europe*?

A. The *English* ministers, who were pacifically inclin'd, took advantage of it, in order to accept of peace, upon the conditions which Monsieur *Menager* offer'd in the name of the *French*, and the preliminaries whereof were signed the 27th of *September*. But as the duke of *Marlborough* refused to enter into their measures, he was on the 31st of *December*, remov'd from all his employments, and the command of the army was bestow'd upon the duke of *Ormond*.

Q. What did this new general perform in 1712?

A. He blindly suffer'd himself to be governed by the ministers who had rais'd him; let slip a fine opportunity he had of defeating the *French*, and which Prince *Eugene* would fain have improv'd; refus'd to assist that Prince in forming the siege of *Landreci*; separated from the allies, and drew off the *English* forces, and publish'd a truce with *France* July 16, N. S. which not only occasion'd the defeat of the allies at *Denain*, but the raising of the siege of *Landreci*, and the loss of *Doway*, *Bouchain*, and *Quesnoy*.

Q. What memorable transactions happen'd in 1713?

A. Notwithstanding the strong remonstrances of the elector of *Hanover*, the pacifick ministers of *Great-Britain* had already begun to negotiate publicly a peace with *France*, and had form'd a congress at *Utrecht*, which was open'd January 29, 1712, where the allies were at last oblig'd to send their plenipotentiaries. Those of *England* scarce acted as mediators; and *Lewis XIV.* and *Queen Anne*, having before-hand agreed upon the conditions of peace, they oblig'd the several princes who form'd the grand alliance to accept them, the emperor excepted, who was afterwards forc'd to make a separate treaty at *Baden*. Thus King *Philip* was left in quiet possession of the *Spanish* throne; and the victories and triumphs of the allies during this long series of war, which had cost immense sums and so much blood, evaporated almost into smoak. This peace was sign'd April 11, N. S.

Q. Did *Queen Anne* long enjoy the peace she had procur'd?

A. Instead of calming all *Europe*, as was her intention, she drew upon herself numberless domestic troubles, which soon brought her to her end.

Q. What was the occasion of those uneasinesses?

A. The persons that form'd the *Triumvirate*, who, as is usual with courtiers, had united themselves only from different political views, and for the sake of their private interests; these finding they were all disappointed of their hopes, came at last to a rupture, which they carried to such a height, that, laying aside the respect they ow'd to a mistress, who had distinguish'd them with the highest marks of her favour, they did

not

not scruple to break out into open invectives, even in her presence; and the earl of *Oxford* was remov'd from his office of lord high-treasurer. Her majesty, who was already weigh'd down by the burthen of her infirmities, was so deeply afflicted to find herself abused by those very ministers to whom she had yielded all her confidence, that being seiz'd with a kind of lethargy, she expired some days after, viz. on the first of *August* 1714, and the same day the elector of *Hanover* was proclaim'd King of *Great-Britain*, &c.

Q. Describe the qualities of Queen *Anne*.

A. To consider her private character, she was prudent, virtuous, charitable, and a perfect model of piety. As a sovereign, she was easy, kind and generous. She was extremely regretted by all her subjects, who had lov'd her during the whole course of her reign. She left no children, tho' she had had four daughters and two sons, and particularly *William* duke of *Gloucester*, who died in his 10th year, and from whom the *English* had conceiv'd the greatest hopes.

F I N I S.

